

Software Manual

SmartSEM[®] V05.06 Operating software for Scanning Electron Microscopes



Carl Zeiss Microscopy - Electron and Ion beam Microscopy

Software Manual

SmartSEM[®] V05.06 Operating software for Scanning Electron Microscopes



Software Manual SmartSEM[®] V05.06

Operating software for Scanning Electron Microscopes

Original instructions

Carl Zeiss Microscopy GmbH

Carl-Zeiss-Promenade 10 07745 Jena, Germany microscopy@zeiss.com www.zeiss.com/microscopy

....

Carl Zeiss Microscopy GmbH Carl-Zeiss-Straße 22 73447 Oberkochen

Document name: Software Manual SmartSEM® V05.06 Revision: en01 Effective from: November 2012

© by Carl Zeiss Microscopy GmbH

346000-8077-000

This document or any part of it must not be translated, reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information or retrieval system. Violations will be prosecuted.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, etc. in this document does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use. Software programs will fully remain the property of Carl Zeiss Microscopy. No program, documentation or subsequent upgrade thereof may be disclosed to any third party, unless prior written consent of Carl Zeiss Microscopy has been procured to do so, nor may they be copied or otherwise duplicated, even for the customer's internal needs apart from a single back-up copy for safety purposes.

Due to an ongoing process of improvement Carl Zeiss Microscopy reserves the right to make modifications of this document without notice.

Table of Contents

| 1. Introduction | . 11 |
|--|------|
| 1.1. For your safety | . 11 |
| 1.1.1. Intended use | 11 |
| 1.2. About this manual | . 11 |
| 1.2.1. Safety instructions in this manual | 12 |
| 1.2.2. Typographical conventions | 13 |
| 1.2.3. Definition of terms | 14 |
| 2. Description | . 15 |
| 2.1. System requirements | . 15 |
| 2.1.1. Operating system | 15 |
| 2.1.2. Dongles | 15 |
| 2.2. Installation | . 15 |
| 2.3. SmartSEM [®] program suite | . 16 |
| 2.4. Available licences | . 19 |
| 2.5. Principle of operation | . 23 |
| 2.6. SmartSFM [®] user interface | 24 |
| 2.7. User access levels | . 26 |
| 3. First steps | . 27 |
| 3.1. Switching on the SEM/FESEM | . 27 |
| 3.2. Starting the SmartSEM [®] user interface | 28 |
| 3.3 Finding your way in the user interface | 30 |
| 3.3.1 Showing or hiding toolbars | . 30 |
| 3.3.2 Showing or hiding the data zone | 00 |
| 3.3.3. Showing a full screen image | 31 |
| 3.3.4. Docking panels | 32 |
| 3.3.5. Opening the Panel Configuration Bar | 34 |
| 3.4. Obtaining the first image | . 35 |
| 3.4.1. Preparing the sample holder | 36 |
| 3.4.2. Loading the specimen chamber | 37 |
| 3.4.3. Locating the specimen | 41 |
| 3.4.4. Switching on the gun | 42 |
| 3.4.5. Switching on the EHT | 43 |
| 3.4.6. Generating an image | 45 |
| 3.4.7. Optimising the image | 47 |
| 3.4.8. Saving the image | 51 |
| 3.5. Using the help functions | . 53 |
| | |
| 3.5.1. Calling the SmartSEM [®] help | 53 |

| 3.5.3. Searching for a topic | 54 |
|--|-----|
| 3.5.4. Using the step-by-step guides | 55 |
| 3.5.5. Calling the shortcuts help | 56 |
| 3.5.6. Showing information about SmartSEM [®] | 57 |
| 3.6. Closing the SmartSEM [®] software | 58 |
| 3.6.1. Logging off | 58 |
| 3.6.2. Exiting | 58 |
| 4. Operation | 59 |
| 4.1. Controlling the vacuum | 59 |
| 4.1.1. Checking the current vacuum status | 59 |
| 4.1.2. Ventilating the specimen chamber | 61 |
| 4.1.3. Evacuating the specimen chamber | 63 |
| 4.1.4. Working with variable pressure (VP instruments only) | 64 |
| 4.2. Navigating the specimen | 66 |
| 4.2.1. Moving the specimen with the soft joystick | 66 |
| 4.2.2. Moving the specimen at high magnifications (Beam Shift) | 67 |
| 4.2.3. Improving stage repeatability by activating the function | 68 |
| 4.2.4. Compensating for image drift by shifting the beam (licence: DRIFT CORR) | 69 |
| 4.2.5. Using fisheye mode (licence: FISHEYE) | 72 |
| 4.2.6. Using the stage navigation functions | 74 |
| 4.2.7. Eucentrically driving a non-eucentric stage (licence: COMPU) | |
| 4.2.8. Saving and recalling stage coordinates (licence: STAGECO) | 84 |
| 4.2.9. Centering a spot or an area (licence: CENTRE) | 85 |
| 4.2.10. Using Stage Map (licence: CENTRE) | 86 |
| 4.2.11. Scanning defined image fields (licence: STAGESCAN) | 87 |
| 4.2.12. Toggling between survey view and detail view (licence: SURVEY) | 88 |
| 4.2.13. Defining a user specific coordinate system (licence: STAGEREG) | 91 |
| 4.3. Setting SEM conditions | 93 |
| 4.3.1. Controlling the gun | 93 |
| 4.3.2. Controlling the EHT | 95 |
| 4.3.3. Blanking the beam | 97 |
| 4.3.4. Modifying the probe current | 98 |
| 4.3.5. Aligning the aperture | 102 |
| 4.3.6. Correcting astigmatism | 103 |
| 4.3.7. Showing SEM parameters (SEM status window) | 104 |
| 4.3.8. Recording SEM parameters | 106 |
| 4.4. Imaging | 109 |
| 4.4.1. Setting detection parameters | 109 |
| 4.4.2. Setting the working distance | 121 |
| 4.4.3. Setting scan parameters | 122 |
| 4.4.4. Setting the magnification | 130 |
| 4.4.5. Imaging tilted specimen | 131 |
| 4.4.6. Improving the signal-to-noise ratio (noise reduction) | 135 |

| 4.4.7. Improving image illumination by using Look Up Tables (LUT) | 138 |
|--|-------|
| 4.4.8. Processing the image (licence: IMMATH) | 143 |
| 4.5. Annotating images | . 153 |
| 4.5.1. Adding text | 153 |
| 4.5.2. Adding geometrical objects | 154 |
| 4.5.3. Adding EM parameters | 155 |
| 4.5.4. Adding a bitmap or metafile | 156 |
| 4.5.5. Zone magnification | 156 |
| 4.5.6. Adding micron markers | 157 |
| 4.5.7. Measuring | 158 |
| 4.5.8. Editing Annotations | 161 |
| 4.5.9. Displaying crosshairs or graticules (licence: GRATICULE) | 163 |
| 4.6. Working with recipes | . 166 |
| 4.6.1. Saving a user-specific recipe | 166 |
| 4.6.2. Saving a common recipe | 166 |
| 4.6.3. Viewing a recipe | 167 |
| 4.6.4. Executing a recipe | 168 |
| 4.6.5. Deleting a recipe | 168 |
| 4.6.6. Creating an ingredient list | 169 |
| 4.6.7. Using the MiniBar to work with recipes | 172 |
| 4.7. Saving and managing images | . 173 |
| 4.7.1. Saving images | 173 |
| 4.7.2. Taking videos (licence: AVI capture) | 178 |
| 4.7.3. Loading images | 179 |
| 4.7.4. Using the Image Gallery | 180 |
| 4.7.5. Printing images | 181 |
| 4.7.6. Copying images to the Windows [®] buffer (licence: CLIP) | 182 |
| 4.7.7. Transmitting data to a FTP server or a network printer (licence: REMARCH) | 184 |
| 4.7.8. Using the Large Image Store Wizard | 187 |
| 4.8. Managing users | . 190 |
| 4.8.1. Managing user profiles | 190 |
| 4.8.2. Managing user accounts (licence: ACCOUNT) | 198 |
| 4.9. Customising the SmartSEM [®] software | . 206 |
| 4.9.1. Customising joystick and control panel settings | 206 |
| 4.9.2. Setting mouse adjustment preferences | 206 |
| 4.9.3. Disabling the splash screen on startup | 207 |
| 4.9.4. Personalising the user interface (User Preferences) | 208 |
| 4.9.5. Customising the data zone | 212 |
| 4.9.6. Customising the toolbar | 215 |
| 4.9.7. Customising the magnification display | 220 |
| 4.9.8. Showing the installed licences | 223 |
| 4.10. Remotely controlling the SEM/FESEM | . 224 |
| 4.10.1. Using RS232 (licence: REMCON) | 224 |
| 4.10.2. Using Windows XP Remote Desktop Connection (licence: Remote SEM) | 225 |
| | |

| 4.11. Communication with additional software | 226 |
|--|--|
| 4.11.1. Communicating with Camelot software (licence: KNIGHTS CAMELOT) | 226 |
| 4.11.2. Reading wafer defect files (licence: DEFECT REVIEW) | 227 |
| 4.12. Backing up / restoring data | 228 |
| 4.12.1. Creating a backup | 228 |
| 4.12.2. Restoring data | 230 |
| 4.13. Working with optional accessories | 232 |
| 4.13.1. Using the Laser Finder | 232 |
| 4.13.2. Using the Quiet Mode | 232 |
| 4.13.3. Measuring the specimen current | 233 |
| 4.13.4. Using the Plasma Cleaner | 234 |
| 5. Troubleshooting | |
| 5.1. Initialising the stage | 240 |
| 5.1.1. Defining the post initialisation position of the stage | 240 |
| 5.2. Changing the joystick TV angle | 241 |
| 5.3. Calibrating OptiProbe | 242 |
| 5.4 Resetting touch alarm | 244 |
| 5.5. Checking water flow and temperature | 211 |
| 5.6. Checking water flow and temperature (MERLIN TM only) | 245 |
| 5.6. Checking water now and temperature (MERLIN Only) | 245 |
| 5.7. Checking the CAN communication (MERLIN Only) | 240 |
| | |
| 6. Summary of software functions | |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus | 247 247 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File | 247 247 247 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit | 247 247 247 254 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View | 247 247 247 254 259 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam | 247 247 254 259 262 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection | 247 247 254 259 262 264 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image | 247 247 254 259 262 264 265 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning | 247 247 254 259 262 264 265 269 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage | 247 247 254 259 262 264 265 269 272 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus | 247 247 254 259 262 262 264 265 269 269 272 272 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.0. Menu Tools | 247 247 254 259 262 264 265 269 275 278 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help | 247 247 254 259 262 262 265 269 272 275 278 288 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help | 247 247 254 259 262 264 265 269 275 278 278 288 290 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) | 247 247 254 259 262 262 264 265 269 272 275 275 278 288 288 290 291 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1.1 Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help 6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) 6.2.2. Bakeout | 247 247 254 259 262 262 265 269 275 278 278 278 288 290 291 291 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help 6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) 6.2.2. Bakeout 6.2.3. Bakeout (MERLIN TM only) | 247 247 254 259 262 262 265 269 265 269 272 278 278 288 290 291 292 293 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help 6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) 6.2.2. Bakeout 6.2.3. Bakeout (MERLIN TM only) 6.2.4. Beam Shift | 247 247 254 259 262 262 265 269 275 278 278 278 290 291 291 291 293 294 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help 6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) 6.2.3. Bakeout (MERLIN TM only) 6.2.4. Beam Shift 6.2.5. BSD Control (optional) | 247 247 254 259 262 262 265 269 265 269 272 278 288 290 291 292 293 294 |
| 6. Summary of software functions 6.1. Menus 6.1.1. Menu File 6.1.2. Menu Edit 6.1.3. Menu View 6.1.4. Menu Beam 6.1.5. Menu Detection 6.1.6. Menu Image 6.1.7. Menu Scanning 6.1.8. Menu Stage 6.1.9. Menu Vacuum 6.1.10. Menu Tools 6.1.11. Menu Help 6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar 6.2.1. Airlock (optional) 6.2.2. Bakeout 6.2.3. Bakeout (MERLIN TM only) 6.2.4. Beam Shift 6.2.5. BSD Control (optional) 6.2.6. CAN Communication (MERLIN TM only) | 247 247 254 259 262 262 264 265 269 272 275 278 278 288 290 291 291 292 293 294 294 295 |

| 6.2.8. Calibrate Stage Centre | . 296 |
|---|-------|
| 6.2.9. Calibrate Stigmation | . 296 |
| 6.2.10. Colour Mode (licence: Colour Mode) | . 296 |
| 6.2.11. Column Calibration | . 297 |
| 6.2.12. Compucentric Height (licence COMPU) | . 298 |
| 6.2.13. Defect Review (licence DEFECT REVIEW) | . 299 |
| 6.2.14. Define User Output Device Magnification | . 300 |
| 6.2.15. Detector Signal Out Configuration (MERLIN TM only) | . 300 |
| 6.2.16. Drift Correction | . 301 |
| 6.2.17. Ext Scan Control | . 303 |
| 6.2.18. Image Navigation | . 304 |
| 6.2.19. Large Image Store Wizard | . 305 |
| 6.2.20. Laser Finder (optional) | . 306 |
| 6.2.21. Long Distance Measurement | . 306 |
| 6.2.22. Magnification Calibration | . 307 |
| 6.2.23. Nano Motor Control | . 307 |
| 6.2.24. Peltier Stage | . 308 |
| 6.2.25. Plasma Cleaning | . 309 |
| 6.2.26. Rotate/Tilt | . 312 |
| 6.2.27. SEM Controls | . 312 |
| 6.2.28. Soft Joystick | . 312 |
| 6.2.29. Specimen Current Monitor | . 313 |
| 6.2.30. Stage Encoder Calibration | . 314 |
| 6.2.31. Stage Horizontal Alignment | . 314 |
| 6.2.32. Stage Limits | . 314 |
| 6.2.33. Stage Nav Settings | . 315 |
| 6.2.34. Stage Navigation | . 316 |
| 6.2.35. Stage Points List | . 316 |
| 6.2.36. Stage Registration (licence STAGEREG) | . 317 |
| 6.2.37. Stage Scanning (licence STAGESCAN) | . 317 |
| 6.2.38. Stage Survey (licence SURVEY) | . 318 |
| 6.2.39. User Settings | . 318 |
| 6.2.40. VP Control (VP instruments only) | . 319 |
| 6.2.41. Water Flow/Temperature | . 320 |
| 6.2.42. Water Flow/Temperature (MERLIN TM only) | . 321 |
| 6.2.43. Windowing | . 322 |
| 6.3. Assignments of toolbar icons (default toolbar) | 323 |
| 6.4. MiniBar icons | 325 |
| 6.5. Annotation icons | 326 |
| 6.6 Shortcuts | 320 |
| | 523 |

| 7. Abbreviations | |
|------------------|--|
| 8. Glossary | |
| 9. Index | |

1. Introduction

1.1. For your safety

Read the instructions in this software manual carefully. Keep the software manual nearby the scanning electron microscope (SEM) or field emission scanning electron microscope (FESEM) and hand it over to future owners of the instrument.

1.1.1. Intended use

The SmartSEM[®] software is intended for the operation of Carl Zeiss SEMs/FESEMs such as SU-PRA[™], ULTRA, and Cross Beam[®] series.

The SmartSEM $^{\! (\! R \!)}$ software has to be run exclusively on a personal computer delivered by Carl Zeiss.

Any other applications are not allowed.

1.2. About this manual

This software manual is designed for operators who have been trained to operate the SEM/FESEM by an authorised expert. It is assumed that the operator is familiar with Windows[®] based programs.

Operators of the SEM/FESEM must not deviate from the instructions provided in this manual.

This software manual contains the following chapters:

• 1. Introduction

Includes general safety information and typographical conventions.

- **2. Description** Describes system requirements, software elements, and operating principles of SmartSEM[®].
- 3. First steps

Summarises briefly how to open the SmartSEM[®] user interface, to navigate and to obtain the first image.

- **4. Operation** Provides details on software-based operation sequences including user management.
- 5. Troubleshooting

Helps to quickly solve possible problems during operation.

- 6. Summary of software functions Lists menus and submenus, assignments of toolbar and annotation bar icons as well as shortcuts.
- 7. Glossary Alphabetical list and explanation of important technical terms used in this manual.
- 8. Abbreviations
- 9. Index

1.2.1. Safety instructions in this manual

The safety instructions in this manual follow a system of risk levels, that are defined as follows:



CAUTION

This safety symbol and signal word indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Disregarding this warning MAY result in minor or moderate injury.

CAUTION

This signal word used without a safety symbol indicates a potentially hazardous situation. Disregarding this warning MAY result in property damage.

Moreover, you will find the following type of hints:



IMPORTANT

This symbol and signal word draws your attention to important and useful information.

1.2.2. Typographical conventions

For the description of software, the following typographical conventions are used:

| Typography | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Push <enter></enter> . | Push the ENTER key on the keyboard. |
| Type <key1< b="">, key2></key1<> | Type key 1 first, then type key 2 on the keyboard. |
| Type <ctrl +="" alt="" del="">.</ctrl> | Simultaneously type CTRL key, ALT key and DEL key on the keyboard. |
| Click the High voltage icon. Select Aperture size from the drop down list. | Icons, buttons, and menus are printed in bold. |
| Select Aperture size $30 \ \mu m$ from the drop-down list. | Values to be selected are printed in italics. |
| Set FIB Fil V Target to zero. | |

| Text | Meaning |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| Click | Press the left mouse button. |
| Right-click | Press the right mouse button. |
| Double-click | Press the left mouse button twice. |

1.2.3. Definition of terms

The following terms are used in this software manual:

| SEM | Scanning electron microscope, referred to as SEM. |
|--|--|
| FESEM | Field emission scanning electron microscope, referred to as FESEM. |
| Carl Zeiss service engineer, Carl Zeiss service staff | Specially trained service expert, either Carl Zeiss staff or authorised service partner of Carl Zeiss. |
| Operator | A trained person, who is assigned to operate the SEM/FESEM. |
| SmartSEM [®] Administrator | Program for user management |

2. Description

2.1. System requirements

2.1.1. Operating system

SmartSEM[®] V05.06 requires the operating system Windows[®] XP or Windows[®] 7.



IMPORTANT

The screenshots shown in this software manual are taken from SmartSEM[®] V05.06 that runs on Windows® XP.

If SmartSEM[®] V05.06 is run on Windows® 7, the screenshots look slightly different. This does not affect operation of the software.



IMPORTANT

The paths in the software are described for Windows® XP. The only difference on Windows® 7 is that the software and its components can be found under "Start/All Programs ..." instead of "Start/Programs...".

CAUTION

The integrated personal computer delivered with the SEM/FESEM should mainly be used to control the SEM/FESEM and to archive images, because the installation of additional software programs might cause problems.

Before installing additional software programs contact your local Carl Zeiss service engineer for his/her recommendation.

2.1.2. Dongles

To operate the software, a SmartSEM[®] dongle has to be installed.

For using the optional drift correction licence (DRIFT-CORR), an additional dongle (called MIL dongle) is required.



IMPORTANT

If a dongle is lost, contact your local Carl Zeiss service engineer to order one. Microscope type and serial number have to be mentioned in the order.

2.2. Installation

The SmartSEM[®] software is pre-installed on your SEM/FESEM by the factory.

For possible updates or upgrades or licence installations contact your local Carl Zeiss service engineer for more information.

2.3. SmartSEM[®] program suite

The fundamental part of the SmartSEM[®] program suite is the EM server, which implements the internal communication between control software and microscope hardware.

Besides EM Server, the SmartSEM[®] program suite includes several programs and utilities.

| | Program/Utility | Function | Remarks | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| Select Start/Programs/ | | | | |
| SmartSEM | ChamberScope | Allows to show the chamberscope image and the detector image at the same time | Option, requires particular hardware. | |
| | FTP Image Archiving | For transferring data via FTP | Requires REMARCH licence | |
| | OptiProbe Calibration | Calibration of OptiProbe after cathode replacement or realigning of the electron optical column | | |
| | ReadMe | Important information on the current installed version | | |
| | RemCon32 | Serial interface for remote operation via RS232 (e.g. for EDX) | Requires REMCON licence. | |
| | SampleHolderGallery | Module to inspect the dimensions of all possible sample holders as well as setting the dimensions of the custom sample holders | | |
| | SEM Drift Correction | Compensates for the drift of the speci- men by using a reference image and by controlling the beam shift | Requires DRIFT-CORR licence. | |
| | Slideshow speed setting | Adjustment of slideshow speed | | |
| | SmartSEM Administrator | User management and instrument configuration | | |
| | SmartSEM User Interface | Graphical user interface of SmartSEM [®] | | |
| | SmartSEM User Accounting | Allows recording of important informa- tion during individual working sessions | | |
| | Release Notes | Overview on all SmartSEM [®] versions including new developments and specific details | | |

Table 2.1: Overview of the SmartSEM[®] program suite

| | Program/Utility | Function | Remarks |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| SmartSEM Service | Calibration Wizard | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Gun Monitor | Utility for monitoring important para- meters of the SEM/FESEM. | Refer to section 4.3.8. |
| | GUN Service | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Piezo Configurator | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Service Centre | Provides an overview of the state of the SEM/FESEM | |
| | Smart Stage Mapping | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Stage Administrator | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Upgrade Scangen Firmware | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Upgrade Server Database | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | SmartBackup Tool | Utility for backing up configuration and calibration data. | Refer to section 4.12. |
| | Merlin Alignment Wizard | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |
| | Merlin Database Wizard | Service activities | For Carl Zeiss service staff only |

| | Program/Utility | Function | Remarks | |
|------------------------|--|---|--|--|
| Select Start/Programs/ | | | | |
| SmartStitch | Online Help | Instructions how to use the applica- tion. | Requires the licence Smart- Stitch. | |
| (if installed) | SmartStitch Image Stitch- ing Application | Opens the SmartStitch user interface. | | |
| | Uninstall SmartStitch | Removes the application from the PC. | | |
| | User Documentation | Instructions how to use the applica- tion. | | |
| | | • | | |

2. Description SmartSEM[®] program suite

| | Program/Utility | Function | Remarks |
|----------------|-------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| Select Start/P | rograms/ | | |
| Smart3D | Smart3D | Opens the Smart3D user interface. | Requires particular soft- and |
| (ir installed) | Smart3D Help | Instructions how to use the applica- tion. | naroware. |
| | Uninstall Smart3D | Removes the application from the PC. | |

2.4. Available licences

Software licences are used to enable specific functionality in the SmartSEM[®] software. Some licences are provided as standard with a specific model of SEM/FESEM, others are purchased as options. When the SEM/FESEM is delivered, the standard and the additionally purchased licences are already installed.

| Licence | Sales code | Part no. | Explanation |
|--|-------------------------|-------------|---|
| - | IA | - | Allows image analysis operations |
| - | QUAD | - | Enables quad mode on MERLIN TM . |
| - | HIGH_KV | - | License introduced for SUPRA 25 to allow 30 kV operation |
| 16 Bit TIFF | TIFF16 | 348224-6052 | Enables to save TIFF images with a grey value depth / grey level depth of 16 bit. |
| 3DBSD | 3DBSD | 351434-6116 | Licence for 3DSM |
| Adjustable Reduced Raster | REDUCED | 350076-0372 | Allows using a scan window with variable size and position, especially recommended for the adjustment of parameters such as focus or stigmator. |
| Advanced Measure- ment | MEASA | 348224-6011 | Further measuring possibilities such as measuring of rectangles, inserting horizontal/vertical measuring lines. |
| Analytical I/F Particle Scan Application | PARTICLE | 348224-6032 | Specific software for automatic particle analysis. Requires particular hardware. |
| API (Application Pro- gramming Interface) | STDAPI | 348224-6036 | Allows SmartSEM [®] to be controlled via external pro- grams. For example 3D EDS software uses this functionality |
| AUTO_CAL | AUTO_CAL | 348224-6085 | AUTO_CAL |
| AVI Capture | AVI | 348224-6056 | Enables capture of image sequences and storage in an AVI file. |
| Cell Counting Software | CELL- COUNTING | 348224-6078 | Allows counting of cell arrays. Requires particular hardware. |
| Centre Feature/Stage Map | CENTRE | 348224-6005 | Enables the point centring (Centre Point) and feature centring (Centre Feature) functions. Enables the function "stage overview map" (Stage Map). |
| Colour Mode | COLOUR- MODE | 348224-6074 | Enables functionality that converts the signal from dif- ferent signal sources in real time and displays it live in false colours without losing important information. |
| Compucentric Stage Software | COMPU | 348224-6030 | Compucentric software enabling tilt/rotation-eucentric control and horizontal alignment of a non-eucentric stage. |
| Customer Calibration Privilege | CUSTOMER_C ALIB_PRIV | 351434-6133 | Allows the user to change service calibration parameters. |

Table 2.2: Available software licences

| Licence | Sales code | Part no. | Explanation |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-------------|---|
| Cut & Paste | CLIP | 350076-0370 | Enables the user to copy and insert SEM images to and from the buffer store. |
| Defect Review | DEFECT- REVIEW | 351434-6024 | Defect Review is used to find defects on a wafer or a mask based on the results from KLA Tencor results file. The defect review dialog allows the user to open a wafer defect file (.rff/.001) and view the defect list (with associated images) and file header details. Requires: Licence STAGEREG 348224-6029 Useful: Licence CENTRE 348224-6005 |
| Depth Mode | DEPTH_MODE | 348224-6084 | Enables higher depth of field at lower resolution. Different levels of relief-like specimens with height var- iations can be in focus at the same time. |
| Drift Correction | DRIFT- CORR | 348224-6058 | Image analysis software to compensate for image drift by beam shift control. Requires additional hardware. |
| Dual Channel | DUAL- CHANNEL | 348224-6062 | Enables the display of two different detector signals in different SmartSEM [®] windows. |
| Dual Image | DUAL IMAGE | 348224-6047 | Dual image - Win 2k uniplinth only. |
| Dual Magnification | DUALMAG | 348224-6003 | Enables a user defined area on the left hand half of a split screen display to be zoomed from 1x to 10x. Images from different detectors can be displayed at the different magnifications. |
| Dynamic Focus | DYNFOCUS | 350076-0364 | Enables a dynamic adaptation of the focus to tilted specimen surfaces during beam passage. |
| Extended Voltage Range | EXVOLTS | 348224-6042 | Acceleration voltage range maximum is set to 40 kV (without this licence only max. 20 kV can be set). |
| Field Mode | FIELD_MODE | 350700-0743 | Ability to select field mode (wide field of view) on EVO systems |
| Fisheye | FISHEYE | 348224-6080 | Enables fisheye image of sample holder and interior of the specimen chamber. |
| FTP Remote Archiving | REMARCH | 348224-6038 | Enables to send files to a FTP server or network printer. |
| Graticule | GRATICULE | 350076-0379 | Allows display of a grid on the screen with a line dis- tance between 50 and 512. |
| High Current Mode | HIGH- CURRENT | 348224-6048 | Special control of the electron optics to increase the specimen current. Not available for SUPRA [™] 25. |
| Image Maths | IMMATH | 348224-6013 | Allows mathematic manipulation of the content of the image memory, e.g. by using Kernel functions, by adding or subtracting images or by detecting grey levels. |
| Image stitching licence | IMAGESTITCH | 351434-6113 | SmartStitch, standalone application for producing tiled images or montages from a set of individual over-palling images captured via SmartSEM [®] . |

Table 2.2: Available software licences

| Licence | Sales code | Part no. | Explanation |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|--|
| Input Gamma | GAMMALUT | 348224-6009 | Release of the Input LUT function to individually adjust the characteristic input line of a detector. |
| Input Signal Invert | INVERT | 350076-0367 | Enables to invert of the signal using Input-LUT. |
| Knights Camelot Integration | KNIGHTS CAMELOT | 351434-6043 | Knights Camelot software is a CAD navigation tool for locating specific features on a semiconductor die. It works by registering the sample with the design of the die to allow the CAD image and SEM images to be synchronised to the same field of view. It is also possi- ble to overlay the image with parts of the design. |
| Large Beamshift | LARGE-BEAM- SHIFT | 348224-6072 | Allows working with an expanded beam shift (+/- 100 µm in X and Y). Requires particular hardware . |
| Low Voltage Working | LOWVOLTS | 348224- 6041 | Acceleration voltage range minimum is set to 0.1 kV (without this licence only 0.5 kV can be set). |
| OptiProbe | OPTIPROBE | 348224-6079 | Allows automatic setting of the probe current. Requires particular hardware. |
| Piezo Integration | PIEZO- INTEGRATION | 348224-6075 | Allows the integration of a Piezo stage. |
| Pivot Point Calibration | PIVOT_POINT_ CAL | 354734-6108 | Allows user to ise software thad does a very precise mag calibration for forensic work. |
| Plasma Cleaning | PLASMA | 351434-6177 | Enables software control of the Plasma Cleaner. |
| Remote SEM | REMOTESEM | 348224-6057 | Remote operation of the microscope is possible using the Windows XP Remote Desktop Connection feature. |
| RS232 Remote Control | REMCON | 348224-6014 | Allows remote operation and interrogation of the SEM/ FESEM by serial communication using RS 232. |
| Scan Rate Expansion | SCANEXP | 350076-0358 | Makes fifteen different scan speeds available (without this licence only three are available). |
| Scan Rotation | SCANROT | 350076-0359 | Allows electronic rotation of the image by changing the scan direction. |
| Signal Mixing | SIGMIX | 350076-0350 | Allows continued mixing of two detector signals in the range between 0 and 100%. |
| SmartBrowse | SMART- BROWSE | 351434-6144 | The additional software SmartBrowse allows the user to sort images by various parameters, such as stage position or detector used. |
| Smart Stage Mapping | SMART- STAGE- MAPPING | 348224-6081 | Calibration routine that optimises the stage accuracy. |
| SmartImage Enhancement | SMARTIMAGE | 348224-6077 | Enables the SmartImage image processing dialog (noise reduction and contrast enhancement). |
| SmartSEM Report Generator | REPORT_GEN ERATOR | 351434-6092 | Enables an Office 2007 add in ribbon that imports CZTIFF images and can read the tags so users can create reports. The CZTIFF images can be created by previous software versions. |

Table 2.2: Available software licences

| Licence | Sales code | Part no. | Explanation |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|-------------|---|
| Split | SPLIT | 350076-0360 | Split screen |
| Spot Mode | SPOT | 350076-0383 | Spot positioning of the electron beam on a given spot of the specimen. |
| Stage Coordinate store and recall | STAGECO | 348224-6006 | Allows saving stage coordinates together with the magnification and the working distances. The stage can automatically be driven to these positions. |
| Stage Fine Step | FINESTEP | 348224-6050 | Allows more precise movement of the stage. |
| Stage Navigator | NAVIGATOR | 351434-6109 | Allows installation of the StageNavigator. |
| Stage Registration | STAGEREG | 348224-6029 | Defines user specific coordinate systems for the speci- men stage. |
| Stage Registration | REGISTER | - | Stage registration (allowing users to define specimen coordinate systems for navigation. |
| Stage Scan | STAGESCAN | 348224-6007 | Allows analysis of a sample range in the form of a series of exactly defined regularly dispersed image fields. |
| Stage Survey Mode | SURVEY | 348224-6040 | Magnifications and working distances for two different working modes can be started automatically. |
| Static Stereo | STATIC- STEREO | 348224-6076 | - |
| Tilt Compensation | TILTCOMP | 350076-0362 | Allows correction of perspective foreshortening occur- ring when scanning tilted specimens. |
| User Accounting | ACCOUNT | 348224-6031 | Automatic registration of special parameters during a working session to enable the instrument administrator to trace who worked on the SEM/FESEM. For each user, the number of saved TIFF images, output photos and prints is saved. |
| User Align | USERALIGN | 351434-6022 | The user align function keeps track of which alignment values each user has utilised for different operating conditions. When these conditions are next used, the previous alignment values will be reloaded. The operation of user align requires no extra involvement of the user, once the function has been enabled on the SEM condi- tions page of the user preferences dialog. |

Table 2.2: Available software licences

2.5. Principle of operation

The SEM/FESEM is operated by the SmartSEM[®] software: All commands, settings and functions necessary for the handling of the SEM/FESEM are controlled by the SmartSEM[®] software using keyboard and/or mouse.

The motorised stage can be operated by the dual joystick or by the software.

In most cases, the SmartSEM[®] user interface offers more than one possibility to run a function. For instance, to switch on the EHT you can use

- the menu bar or
- the status bar or
- the MiniBar or
- the **Gun** tab in the **SEM Controls** panel.

This allows the user to operate the ${\sf SmartSEM}^{{\sf (\!\!R\!)}}$ software according to his/her individual preferences.

2.6. SmartSEM[®] user interface

The SmartSEM[®] software is operated via a graphical user interface that can be used intuitively.



Menu bar When left-clicking on a menu, the pull-down menu shows the different submenus.

- **User toolbar** Most icons in the toolbar are assigned twice. The different functions and parameters can be activated by pressing the left or the middle mouse button. When moving the cursor across the icon, tool tips show the different assignments.
- MiniBar The MiniBar provides quick access to recently used dialogs and to the recipe management.
- **Status bar** The status bar shows the active mouse assignment:
 - Left: left mouse button
 - Mid: middle mouse button

Moreover, it shows the **Coarse/Fine** toggle button and allows access to a pop-up menu for quick control of important SEM parameters.

- Annotation bar The annotation bar allows putting additional information on the SEM image. Text, SEM parameter data, and even bitmaps (like logos etc.) can easily be added to the image. Moreover, it provides several measurement functions.
- Data zoneThe data zone contains important information on the recording parameters of the current image.Each user can design the data zone as desired and store it together with the image.
- Panel Confi-
guration BarThe panel configuration bar allows accessing to several functions which are listed alphabetically.

Moreover, the following symbols may be displayed in the user interface:

Anchor symbol The anchor symbol is displayed when using functions that divide the image area into different zones, e.g. the functions Split, Windowing, or Dual Magnification.

Image modifications are applied only to the zone marked with the green anchor symbol.

The red *and* green anchor symbol indicates that image modifications are applied to both zones simultaneously.





| Red dot | A red dot displayed in the lower right corner of the image area indicates that the image has been fro- zen. | • |
|--------------|---|---|
| Blue dot | A blue dot displayed in the lower right corner of the image area indicates that the image has been saved. | • |
| Red triangle | A red triangle displayed in the lower right corner of the image area indicates that the image has been saved by using the Image Capture mode. | • |

2.7. User access levels

SmartSEM[®] distinguishes three user access levels. The user access level defines which parameters are displayed for selection purposes (e.g. in the status window selection, annotation parameter selection).

Novice

Displays only those items assigned as novice category. These include most frequently used parameters.

- Expert Displays items assigned as novice and expert category. These include parameters useful for advanced operators.
- Service/Full

Displays all items, also including infrequently uses items and calibrations.

The user profile is the collection of privileges and settings associated with the username.

3. First steps

At a glance This chapter contains information about:

- Switching on the SEM/FESEM
- Starting the SmartSEM[®] user interface
- Finding your way in the SmartSEM[®] software
- Obtaining the first image
- Using the help functions
- Closing the SmartSEM[®] software

3.1. Switching on the SEM/FESEM

If the SEM/FESEM is in OFF mode:

- a Lift the protective lid of the yellowSTANDBY button (1) that is located at the front of the plinth.
- b Press the yellow **STANDBY** button (1).

Now, the SEM/FESEM is in STANDBY mode.



1 To switch on the SEM/FESEM, press the green **ON** button (*2*) that is located at the front of the plinth.



3.2. Starting the SmartSEM[®] user interface

Prerequisites:

- The SEM/FESEM is switched on.
- The Windows[®] operating system has been loaded.
- 1 Double-click the Carl Zeiss SmartSEM icon.

Alternatively, select Start/Programs/Smart-SEM/SmartSEM User Interface.



The **EM Server** opens, loading various drivers. The function of the EM Server is to implement the internal communication between the SmartSEM[®] software and hardware of the SEM/FESEM.

| Time | Message | <u>^</u> |
|------------|---|----------|
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 EM Server V05.02 May 2006 | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Loading Master DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Initialising DISPLAY DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Initialising VACUUM DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Initialising EO DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Initialising MODE DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Initialising STAGE DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Initialising ACQUIRE DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Initialising IMEX DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Initialising EHT DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Initialising Wafer DLL | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Reading Database | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Setting Column-chamber valve threshold from registry: value = 2e-005 | mBar |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Setting Column-chamber valve threshold from registry: value = 2e-005 | mBar |
| 15:57 11-0 | 1-2007 Finished Reading Database | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 11-2007 Notifying Master DLL Of Parameters Needed | |
| 15:57 11-0 | 14 2007 Initializing Parameter Manager | |

The EM Server Log On dialog appears.

- 2 Enter your username and password.
- 3 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

| EM Server Lo | og On | |
|--------------|---------------------|--------|
| | Welcome to SmartSEM | OK |
| User Name | | Cancel |
| Password | | Help |

The SmartSEM[®] user interface opens.

| SmartSEA - [SYSTEA] | . 0 🛛 |
|--|--|
| File Edit View Beam Detection Image Scarning Stage Vacuum Tools Help | |
|] 🗊 📝 🛒 🕞 Ia 2a 3a 4a 5a 🏭 · 🏗 🌉 🏗 🎆 🎇 🎬 🕪 🗮 +•• 😤 🧊 🍘 🖨 | |
| | Stat Control Stat Control Detector: Signal A Signal A Collector Bias - 300 Signal A Collector Bias - 300 Mixing Signal Aduat Mixing Control Tamparet Gama Onverse User Control Tamparet Control Ta |
| × | Coarse 🔵 Vac: 🗸 Gun: 🗙 EHT: 🗙 |
| · ● · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |

The **EM Server** is minimised to a small element (icon) on the right side of the Windows[®] task bar.

The SmartSEM[®] software is ready to operate the SEM/FESEM.

3.3. Finding your way in the user interface

3.3.1. Showing or hiding toolbars

Several toolbars such as user toolbar, status bar, and annotation bar are available for easy access to the SmartSEM $^{\rm @}$ functions.

1 Select View/Toolbars.

Alternatively, type <**Ctrl+B**>.

The Toolbar Views panel is shown.

| oolbars User Toolbar (the main toolbar for the application) Status Bar (shows tips and current machine state) HFP Status (hard front panel status) | User Toolbar Tool Tips Show Immediately (no delay) Show (after a delay) Hide |
|---|---|
| Thumbnails (store and retrieve images) Annotation Bar (for drawing and measuring on the image) | Showing tooltips immediately can help when learning to use or demonstrating the system. The options above apply ONLY to the user toolbar. |
| Mini Bar (quick access to common functions) | |
| AVI Capture (for recording a series of images) | |
| DeakingPanal (allows deaking of SEM panala) | |

- 2 If you wish to show a toolbar, tick the respective checkbox.
- 3 To change the tooltip features of the user toolbar, select the respective radio button on the right hand side of the panel.
- 4 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

3.3.2. Showing or hiding the data zone

The data zone is a special group of annotation objects which are used to display current parameters. You can also include a μ -marker to show the base magnification.

1 Select View/Data Zone/Show Data Zone from the menu.

A tick is shown to indicate that the function is activated.

Alternatively, type **<Ctrl+D>** to toggle the data zone.



3.3.3. Showing a full screen image

To take advantage of the full monitor size to display the microscopic image, show a full screen image.

Select View/Toggle Full Screen Image from the menu.
 Alternatively, type <Shift + F3>.

To undo the function, type **<Shift + F3>**.

3.3.4. Docking panels

It is possible to dock various panels onto the main window. The purpose of the docking panel is to keep the area of the image completely clear, as the docking panel is outside the main window.

- 1 To show the docking panel select **View/Toolbars** from the menu.
- 2 Tick the **Docking Panel** checkbox.



The docking panel is shown on the right hand side of the image area.



3 To move the docking panel to the left hand side, pick up the panel by clicking on the title bar and drag it to the other side of image area.

4 To stick a control panel to the docking panel, click the title bar of the control panel and drag it to the docking panel.

The panel becomes integrated into the docking panel.

| Securities (SYSTER) | . 1 🛚 |
|---|--|
| ■ 12 見 4 4 4 5 11 - 11 単 12 第 12 10 - ■ + 2 2 2 4 5 | |
| | Constant Stage Vacan Constant Stage Vacan Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Devices Person Deverso Deverso Deverso Person Deverso Deverso Person Deverso Deverso Person Deverso Deverso Person Deverson Deverson Deverso Person Deverso Person D |
| * heads | Course O Vac X Gam X (NT: X |
| | THE feel the sease of all |

You can stick several control panels to the docking panel.

5 To minimise a panel, click the **arrow** button (*1*) in the title bar.



6 To hide the docking panel untick the **Docking Panel** checkbox.

The docking panel is hidden.

| Ef Wer Kein Greicher Hauf Sterrig Stage Vouur Toch Hei | Smart | SEM | 5Y511 | 66) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | - 2 |
|---|----------|------|--------|-----------|-------|---------|--------|---------|----------|------------|-----|------|-----|------|-------|----|----|---|--------|-------|------|--------|----------|
| net. | File Edk | View | Beam (| Detection | Snape | Scient | ng Sta | pe Vacu | um To | ools Heelp | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | E. | It# | - | C | 1 | 2. | 3 | 4 | 5. | ¥1 . | PE- | 15-3 | 100 | 100 | Har . | RE | 00 | - | 00 | \$ 0 | - | 1 | 4 |
| net | Be- | 10 | | - | - | (10.00) | - | - | (100.00) | | - | | - | enn | 1.84 | - | - | | | 1.23 | CIN | Mail | |
| net. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rety | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| refu | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| redy. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| refu | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| edy. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| rety. Corest ● Vaci y [*] Don X [001.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| redy. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| refu | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| redy. Contrat ● Vaci y [*] Don X [D11] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| edy. Const € Vec X Don X Din | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| redy. Contrat ● Vaci y* Don; X* [D11] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Careta ● Vaci y [*] Dani X [*] [Dini | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nety. Careta ● Vaci y [*] Dani X [D10] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| redy. Careta ● Vaci y Davi X [D01] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nety | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Careta ● Vaci y ² Dani X [D10] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Careta ● Vec y Don X [D10] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Careta ● Vaci y Dani X [Diff.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nedy. Central ● Vaci y Don X [D01] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| naty Carrot ● Vini V Gun X [001.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Carra € Vec V Don X [D01 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nadija Canarat ● Vini y ² Gare X [Mit]. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| natųCearat ● Vasi y ⁻ Dan X [101.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| andy Careta 🜒 Van 🖌 [One 🗙 [Off.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nady. Casesa ● Visi y Sum X [M1.] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| nely. Careta 🜒 Vani 🗸 [Ours 🏹 [Ours 🏹 [Ours] | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| eady Caarte 🜒 Ven 🖓 Gee 🗙 [107: 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| vedy. Cearter ♥ Veri ✔ Son X (M1.) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| away, Cawre 🔮 Vec. 🖉 Gere 🗙 (MT) 2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| inady. Coarse 🖲 Vaci 🗸 Gurs 🗶 EHTL 🕽 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | - | 1944 | |
| | Ready. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | Coa | rse 😐 | Vaci | Gurs > | (EHTT) |
| | | - | 100 | 1 | 1 | - 0 | | M | 0 | | T | in a | | | 10 | 0 | of | | . 11 . | - | d | 516 | a 1.1 |
| | | | and a | 11 | | 1 100 | - | 1 | ~ | 100 | - | - | - | a 14 | | | - | | - | 1 | | | 2/ 14 |

3.3.5. Opening the Panel Configuration Bar

1 Select Tools/Goto Panel from the menu.

Alternatively, click the arrow button at the side of the image area.

The **Panel Configuration Bar** opens showing an alphabetical list of functions.

2 To select a function, double-click it.



3.4. Obtaining the first image

The following section summarizes basic sequences to quickly obtain an image using the SE2 detector. To simplify the procedure, the method described mainly uses **SEM Controls** panel and status bar functions.

Dependent on your type of SEM/FESEM (Standard vacuum system, VP vacuum system, Cross Beam[®] series), the SmartSEM[®]user interface may differ slightly.

Prerequisite:

• SmartSEM[®] software has been started and is ready to control the SEM/FESEM.

| Parts required | No. |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Allen wrench, 1.5 mm | delivered with the SEM/ FESEM |
| Stub | delivered with the SEM/ FESEM |
| Tweezers for specimen | delivered with the SEM/ FESEM |
| Specimen holder | delivered with the SEM/ FESEM |
| If necessary: carbon tape, conductive carbon, adhesive metal tape or similar | - |
| Appropriate specimen (with conducting properties e.g. gold on carbon) | - |
| Lint-free gloves | - |

At a glance

- The complete sequence includes:
 - Preparing the sample holder
- Loading the specimen chamber
- Locating the specimen
- Switching on the gun
- Switching on the EHT
- Generating an image
- Optimising the image
- Saving the image

3.4.1. Preparing the sample holder



IMPORTANT

Contamination caused by fingerprints can lead to vacuum deterioration or prolonged pumping times. Always wear lint-free gloves when touching specimen, sample holder or stage.

1 Attach the specimen to the stub by using conductive carbon, adhesive metal or carbon tape etc.

Ensure that the specimen area to be analysed is in proper contact with the stub.



2 Use the tweezers to insert the stub into the sample holder.



Properly fix the stub to the sample holder.
 Use the Allen wrench to tighten the location screw.


3.4.2. Loading the specimen chamber

1 Click the **ChamberScope** icon in the toolbar.



A TV view inside the specimen chamber is shown.



CAUTION

Risk of damaging the objective lens and/or your specimen Ensure not to hit the objective lens while driving the stage. Change to TV mode to observe the moving stage.

2 Select **Tools/Goto Control Panel** from the menu.

The SEM Controls panel opens.

- 3 Go to the Vacuum tab.
- 4 To ventilate the specimen chamber, click **Vent**.

| SEM Control | | ۲ | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|--------|--|--|
| | | | | |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | | |
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | |
| System Vacu | System Vacuum = 6.04e-006 mbar | | | |
| la nu vacann | = 4.308-010 IIIDal | | | |
| Vent inhibit = None | | | | |
| Vac Status = Ready | | | | |
| Column Chamber valve = Open | | | | |
| EHT Vac ready = Yes | | | | |
| Column pumping = Ready | | | | |
| Pump | | | | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | | | | |

A message appears asking: 'Are you sure you want to vent?'.

5 Confirm by clicking on Yes.

The specimen chamber is filled with gaseous nitrogen.



CAUTION

Suffocation hazard due to lack of oxygen, since the specimen chamber is ventilated with nitrogen.

After the specimen exchange, keep the chamber door open as short as possible. Avoid inhaling the air from within the specimen chamber.

6 Take hold of the door handle and slowly open the chamber door.



IMPORTANT

Contamination caused by fingerprints can lead to vacuum deterioration or prolonged pumping times.

Always wear lint-free gloves when touching specimen, sample holder or stage. Keep the chamber door open as short as possible.



All sample holders are equipped with a dovetail so that the position of the sample holder is exactly defined.

- 7 Mount the sample holder:
 - a Ensure that you place the dovetail in the correct orientation onto the holding device on the specimen stage.
 - b Make sure that the flat side of the dovetail of the sample holder is flush with the milled edge of the stage.



8 Look into the specimen chamber to ensure that the specimen cannot hit any components when it is introduced into the specimen chamber.



CAUTION

Pinch hazard when closing the chamber door Use the door handle to close the chamber door. Ensure not to get your fingers caught in the chamber door gap.

9 Carefully close the chamber door.



10 In the SEM Controls panel, click **Pump**.

The vacuum status messages show the current vacuum levels achieved.

| SEM Control | ۲ | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Gun Apertures Detectors Scanning | Stage Vacuum | |
| System Vacuum = 4.90e-006 mb | ar | |
| Gun Vacuum = 4.87e-010 mbar | | |
| Vent inhibit = None | | |
| Vac Status = At Air | | |
| Column Chamber valve = Closed | | |
| EHT Vac ready = Yes | | |
| Column pumping = Ready Pump Vent | | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | , | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

3.4.3. Locating the specimen



1 In TV mode (ChamberScope), look into the specimen chamber.

CAUTION

Risk of damaging the objective lens and/or your specimen. Ensure not to hit the objective lens while driving the stage. Change to TV mode to observe the moving stage.

- 2 Move the specimen by using the dual joystick (optional) or by calling the Soft Joystick via **Tools/Goto Panel/Soft Joystick**.
- Carefully move the specimen closer to the objective lens.
 The distance between objective lens and specimen surface should be less than about 10 mm.

3.4.4. Switching on the gun

1 In the Vacuum tab:

Check that EHT Vac ready=Yes is indicated.

| SEM Control | | ۲ | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | |
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | |
| System Vacu | um = 4.90e-006 mt | par | |
| Gun Vacuum | = 4.87e-010 mbar | | |
| Vent inhibit = None | | | |
| Vac Status – At Air | | | |
| | | | |
| Column Chamber valve = Closed | | | |
| EHT Vac read | dy = Yes | | |
| Column pumping = Ready | | | |
| Pump Vent | | | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | | | |
| | | | |

- 2 In the status bar, click **Gun**.
- 3 Select **Gun On** from the pop-up menu.

The gun is being run up.



3.4.5. Switching on the EHT

'EHT' stands for acceleration voltage. This voltage has to be applied to the gun in order to make it emit electrons.

C

1 Watch the vacuum status messages on the **Vacuum** tab of the **SEM Controls** panel.

When the required vacuum has been reached you will see the message 'Vac Status = Ready'.

| 2 | Go | to | the | Gun | tab. |
|---|----|----|-----|-----|------|
|---|----|----|-----|-----|------|

- 3 Set the acceleration voltage:
 - a Double-click in the EHT= field.

- b Enter the desired acceleration voltage in the **EHT Target** field, e.g. *10 kV*.
- c Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

| \mathbf{X} | | EHT Target |
|--------------|--------|------------|
| | ОК | (kV) 10 |
| | Cancel | |
| | Cancel | |

| Instruction Manual SmartSEM [®] V05.06 en01 | |
|--|--|
|--|--|

| Gun | Apertures | Stage | |
|--------------------------------|------------------|--------|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | |
| System Vacuum = 6.04e-006 mbar | | | |
| Gun Vacuum | = 4.98e-010 mbar | | |
| Vent inhibit = None | | | |
| Vac Status = Ready | | | |
| Column Chamber valve = Open | | | |
| EHT Vac ready = Yes | | | |
| Column pumping = Ready | | | |
| Pump Vent | | | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | | | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | | | |
| | | | |

| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | |
|--------------------------|-----------|--------|--|--|
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | | |
| EHT = 0.00 kV | | | | |
| Extractor V = 4.72 kV | | | | |
| Extractor I = 159.70 μA | | | | |
| Fill = 2.370 A | | | | |
| Beam State = EHT Off 🛛 💉 | | | | |

- 4 Switch on the EHT:
 - a Click **EHT** in the status bar.
 - b Select EHT On from the pop-up menu.



The EHT is running up to 10 kV.

The status bar buttons are merged together, and the **All:** button appears.

| MR: WD = 40 mm | Course | All |
|----------------|----------|--------|
| MD: WD = 10 mm | Coarse 🔵 | All: 🗸 |

Now the electron beam is on.

3.4.6. Generating an image

- 1 Go to the **Detectors** tab.
- 2 Select SE2 from the **Detectors** drop-down list.

It is recommended that you select the SE2 detector to obtain the first image, as this detector provides a good signal-to-noise ratio even at large working distances.



3 Go to the **Scanning** tab.

Select a fast scan speed, e.g. Scan Speed = 1 from the drop-down list.

The lower the scan speed number, the faster the scan of the specimen by the electron beam. Scan Speed = 1 allows you to get an image quickly.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage | |
|--|---------------|-----------|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | |
| Operating Mode = Normal | | | |
| Line Scan | Scan Speed | = 1 | |
| Spot 📃 | Cycle Time = | 122.00 ms | |
| 🔲 Dual Mag | Zoom factor : | = 2.000 | |
| Noise Reduc | tion | | |
| Freeze on = Command | | | |
| Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Image: Scan + Freeze Scan - | | | |

- 4 Set a low magnification e.g. *Mag* = 500*x*:
 - a Click the **Magnification/Focus** icon in the toolbar.
 - b Press the left mouse button and drag the mouse to adjust the magnification of *500 x*.

The current magnification is indicated in the status bar.

- 5 Set the focus:
 - a Press the middle mouse button and drag the mouse to focus.

The current working distance (WD) is indicated in the status bar.

- 6 Adjust contrast and brightness.
 - a Go to the **Detectors** tab.
 - b Use the **Brightness** and **Contrast** sliders.
- 7 Select a detail on the specimen surface. Focus the detail.
- 8 Adjust contrast and brightness again.



| LB: Mag = | 500 X MB: WD = 10.2 mm |
|-----------|--------------------------|
|-----------|--------------------------|

LB: Mag = 500 X | MB: WD = 10.2 mm

| | Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|---|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| | Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| | Detectors | | |
| | Signal A = SE2 | | tor Bias = 300 |
| | Signal B = InLei | ns 🔽 Signa | L- 1.000 |
| | Mixing | Signa 🔇 | I = 1.000 |
| | - Signal Adjust- | | Input LUT Mode |
| | Auto BC = Ulf | × | 💿 Transparent |
| / | Brightness = 48 | 6.7 % | 🔘 Gamma |
| | | | 🔘 Inverse |
| | Contrast = 29.6 | 5% | 🔿 User |
| | Gamma = 1.0 |)00 | |
| | | | > |
| | | | |

3.4.7. Optimising the image

- 1 Set *Coarse* by toggling the **Coarse/Fine** button in the status bar.
- 2 Step by step, set a high magnification, e.g. Mag *50.000 x*.

Focus in between.

When selecting high magnifications it is recommended that you move the specimen by using the beamshift function instead of driving the stage.

- 3 Use the Beam shift function:
 - a Go to the Apertures tab.
 - b Click Beam Shift.
 - c Use the slider or the red marker to shift the beam.

| MB: WD = 10 mm | Coarse 🔴 | All: 🗸 |
|----------------|----------|--------|
| | | |



4 Click the Reduced Raster icon.



A small scan frame is shown.

The image outside the scan frame is frozen. Size and position of the scan frame can be changed by dragging and dropping.



- 5 Focus the image in the reduced raster.
- 6 Align the aperture:
 - a In the **Apertures** tab, tick the **Focus Wobble** checkbox.

The Focus Wobble is a function that sweeps the focus of the objective lens backwards and forwards through the focus on the specimen plane. If the aperture is slightly misaligned, a lateral shift can be observed.

Intensity of wobble can be adjusted by using the **Wobble Amplitude** scroll bar. Wobble speed can be accelerated by ticking the **Wobble Fast** checkbox.

b Click Aperture Align.

Use the left and right slider of the **Aperture Align** box until there is no movement of the detail in X and Y direction.

The specimen detail should just be pulsating without shifting.

c Untick the Focus Wobble checkbox.



- 7 In the **Scanning** tab, set *Scan Speed* = 7.
- 8 Bring the image into focus.
- 9 Toggle to Fine in the status bar.Use Coarse and Fine mode of adjustment where appropriate.
- MB: Contrast = 50.0 % Fine 🕥 All: 🗸

- 10 Correct astigmatism:
 - a Select a detail (e.g. a mark or an edge) on the specimen surface.
 - b Click the **Reduced Raster** icon.Ensure the selected detail is in the raster.



- c In the **Apertures** tab: Click **Stigmation**.
- d In the **Stigmation** box, use the arrow buttons or the left and right slider to obtain the sharpest possible image.

| | Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
|---|---------------|-----------------|-------------|
| | Gun | Apertures | Stage |
| | Aperture Size | m - Standard | ~ |
| | (.) | | |
| | Focus Wo | bble | Wobble Fast |
| | Wobble Amp | litude = 41.2 % | > |
| | 📃 Beam Blar | nked | Emission |
| | Mag / Focu | s Stigmation | |
| | Aperture Alig | ŋ | <u>~</u> |
| | Gun Align | | |
| (| Stigmation | | ~ |
| | Beam Shift | | >0 |
| | | | h Current |

- 11 Deactivate the reduced raster.
- 12 In order to reduce image noise select, a slower scan speed, e.g. scan speed 6 to 8.

Stage

3.4.8. Saving the image

- 1 Stop the scan:
 - a Go to the **Scanning** tab.

- In the Noise Reduction section, select
 Freeze on = End Frame from the dropdown menu.
- c Click Freeze.

| Operating Mode = Reduced Store resolution = 1024 * 768 Line Scan Scan Speed = 7 Spot Cycle Time = 574.00 ms Dual Mag Zoom factor = 2.000 Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Detectors | Vacuum | | | | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Store resolution = 1024 * 768 Line Scan Spot Cycle Time = 574.00 ms Dual Mag Zoom factor = 2.000 Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Operating Mode = Reduced | | | | | | | |
| Line Scan Scan Speed = 7 Spot Cycle Time = 574.00 ms Dual Mag Zoom factor = 2.000 Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan + | | Store resolution | = 1024 * 768 | ~ | | | | | |
| Spot Cycle Time = 574.00 ms Dual Mag Zoom factor = 2.000 Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Line Scan Scan Speed = 7 | | | | | | | |
| Dual Mag Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Spot Spot | Cycle Time = | 574.00 ms | | | | | |
| Noise Reduction Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Dual Mag | | | | | | | |
| Freeze on = End Frame Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | | Noise Reduction | | | | | | | |
| Noise Reduction = Frame Avg N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan - | / | Freeze on = Er | nd Frame | ~ | | | | | |
| | | Noise Reduction | on = Frame Avg Freeze | V Scan - | | | | | |

Apertures

Gun

A red dot at the right bottom of the image area indicates that the image is frozen.

2 Select File/Save Image from the menu.

| Export TIFF [C:\Progra | am Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\images\] 2 Save Settings |
|---|--|
| Gold on carbon0.tif Gold on carbon1.tif Gold on carbon2.tif | Filename Gold on carbon Next 3 |
| | Format Max 30 Chars M Digits 1 |
| | Merge Annotation Colour Merge |
| | User Text |
| Save (File)3.tif | |

- 3 Enter a path and a file name.
- 4 Confirm by clicking on Savetif.

To continue imaging, unfreeze the image by selecting **Image/Unfreeze** from the menu.



| liun | Apertures | Stage | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | | | |
| Operating Mod | le = Normal | ~ | | | | |
| Store resolution | n = 1024 * 768 | ~ | | | | |
| Line Scan Scan Speed = 7 | | | | | | |
| Spot Cycle Time = 5.1 Secs | | | | | | |
| Dual Mag | | | | | | |
| - Noise Reduc | tion | | | | | |
| Freeze on = E | ind Frame | ~ | | | | |
| Noise Reduction = Frame Avg | | | | | | |

Alternatively, you can click **Unfreeze** in the **Scanning** tab.

To finish your work session, switch off the EHT:

- a In the status bar, click All:.
- b Select EHT Off from the pop-up menu.

It is recommended that you leave the gun on during the working week. This should help to optimise lifetime of the filament.



3.5. Using the help functions

The SmartSEM[®] user interface offers a multitude of help texts containing information on the operation of the SEM/FESEM, the optimization of the images and the handling of accessory options.

3.5.1. Calling the SmartSEM[®] help

1 Press <**F1**>.

Alternatively, select Help/SmartSEM help from the menu.

The SmartSEM[®] help start window opens.

If menus are opened in the SmartSEM[®] user interface, pressing **<F1>** will open the help text for the respective menu. This allows explaining the menu while the SEM/FESEM is being operated.



3.5.1.1. Printing help texts

- 1 Click the printer icon in the help window.
- If a printer is installed, the help text is printed.

3.5.1.2. Bringing help texts to the foreground

1 Select **Help/Help Always On Top** from the menu.

The displayed help texts remain in the foreground.

3.5.2. Calling the context-sensitive help

1 Press <**SHIFT+F1**>.

Alternatively, select **Help/What's This** from the menu.

The mouse cursor is equipped with a question mark.

2 Click an area of interest on the screen.

The help text is shown.

3 To disable the context-sensitive help, press <**ESC**>.

3.5.3. Searching for a topic

- 1 Select **Help/Search** from the menu.
- 2 Click the Search tab.
- 3 Search for the desired topic.



3.5.4. Using the step-by-step guides

The step-by-step guides provide quick information on important operation sequences.

3.5.4.1. Getting started

- 1 Select Help/Getting started from the menu.
- 2 Click the topic of interest.



3.5.4.2. Frequently used operation sequences

- 1 Select **Help/How To** from the menu.
- 2 Click the topic of interest.



3.5.5. Calling the shortcuts help

Many functions and menus which are often used in the SmartSEM[®] user interface can also be opened using the keyboard. A list of shortcuts (key combinations) can be displayed in the Smart-SEM[®] help.

1 Press < **F9**>.

Alternatively, select Help/Keys help from the menu.



Refer to section 6.6.

3.5.6. Showing information about SmartSEM[®]

3.5.6.1. Version history

The Release Notes summarise important information about the software version history. New functions, bug fixes and special features of the different versions are explained.

1 Select Help/Release Notes from the menu.



3.5.6.2. About SmartSEM®

1 Select **Help/About SmartSEM** from the menu.



3.6. Closing the SmartSEM[®] software

3.6.1. Logging off

1 Select File/Log Off from the menu.

A window appears asking for confirmation to close the session.

2 Confirm by clicking on Yes.

The electron-optical parameters are filed in a macro in the individual user directory.

The EM Server remains active.

| 🗖 Smar | tSEM 🛛 🔀 |
|--------|----------------------|
| 2 | Closing the software |
| ~ | Are you sure? |
| Ye | s No |

3.6.2. Exiting

1 Select File/Exit from the menu.

A window appears asking for confirmation to close the session.

2 Confirm by clicking on Yes.

The electron-optical parameters are filed in a macro in the individual user directory.



4. Operation

4.1. Controlling the vacuum

4.1.1. Checking the current vacuum status

Because a good vacuum is essential for the operation of the SEM/FESEM it is recommended keeping always an eye on the vacuum in specimen chamber and gun head.

- 1 Select **Tools/Goto Control Panel** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the Vacuum tab.

Alternatively: Select Vacuum/Vacuum Status from the menu.

Alternatively: Type **<CTRL+SHIFT+V>**.

The *System Vacuum* is the vacuum in the specimen chamber.

The *Gun Vacuum* is the ultra high vacuum in the gun head area. The value of the *Gun Vacuum* should be less than about 5×10^{-9} mbar.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|----------------|--------------------|--------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| System Vacu | um = 1.94e-006 mB | Bar |
| Gun Vacuum | = 2.46e-010 mBar | |
| Vent inhibit = | None | |
| Vac Status = | Ready | |
| Column Cham | iber valve = Open | |
| EHT Vac rea | dy = Yes | |
| Column pump | ing = Ready | |
| Pu | mp | Vent |
| Parti | ial Vent on Standb | y |

To indicate another pressure unit (*mbar, Pa, Torr*) click in the System Vacuum or the Gun Vacuum field.

VP If you work with a VP instrument, the Vacuum tab looks slightly different.

| Detector | rs Scanr | ning | Gun Vacuum | | | | |
|---|-----------------|---------|------------|--|--|--|--|
| Gun | Apertures | Stag | ge Vacuum | | | | |
| System Vacuum = 1.91e-006 mBar Vent inhibit = None | | | | | | | |
| Vac 9 | Status = Read | ły | | | | | |
| EHT | Vac ready = ` | íes 🛛 | | | | | |
| Pu | ump | | Vent | | | | |
| | Partial Vent o | n Stand | by | | | | |
| -VP Con | itrol | | | | | | |
| 🔲 Go | otoHV@Sh | utdown | | | | | |
| Chamber = 100000 Pa | | | | | | | |
| VP Target = 36 Pa | | | | | | | |
| Char | nber Status = I | Power L | Jp | | | | |
| Go | To HV | | Go To VP | | | | |

Moreover, there is an additional tab: The **Gun Vacuum** tab.

1 To show the gun vacuum, go to the **Gun** Vacuum tab.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage | Vacuum | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|------------|------------|--|--|--|
| Detector | rs Scann | ing | Gun Vacuum | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| System) | Vacuum = 1.94 | 4e-006 mB | ar | | | |
| Gup Var | ruum = 2.46e-l | 010 mBar | | | | |
| juurva | Juuni - 2.4064 | oromba | | | | |
| Vent inh | iibit = None | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Vac Sta | tus = Ready | | | | | |
| Calum | Characteristic | 0 | | | | |
| JColumn | Chamber valve | e = Upen | | | | |
| EHT Va | c readv = Yes | | | | | |
| , | | | | | | |
| Column pumping = Ready | | | | | | |
| Pump | | | | | | |
| vent | | | | | | |
| | Partial Ven | t on Stand | iby | | | |

4.1.2. Ventilating the specimen chamber

In order to be able to open the specimen chamber for specimen exchange, the vacuum has to be broken in a controlled manner. This is done by filling the specimen chamber with gaseous nitrogen.

1 In the toolbar, click the **Specimen Change** icon.

The EHT is switched off.

The specimen chamber is ventilated.



Alternatively:

- 1 Go to the **Gun** tab and select *EHT Off* from the drop-down list.
- 2 In the Vacuum tab, click Vent.

| Detecto | rs | Scann | ing | Gu | n Vacuum |
|---------|---------|------------|---------|---------|----------|
| Gun | Ap | ertures | Sta | ge | Vacuum |
| Quete | om Va | - 1 | 936.0 | 006 mg | 2 ar |
| Joysu | sili ve | scuum – I | | 000 111 | |
| Vent | inhibi | it = None | | | |
| Vac | Statu | s = Read | y | | |
| EHT | Vac | ready = Y | es | | |
| P | ump | | | Ven | : |
| | Partia | al Vent or | n Stano | dby | |

Alternatively:

- 1 In the status bar, click All:.
- 2 Select EHT Off from the pop-up menu.

The Vac button appears.

- a Click Vac:.
- b Select Vent.



Alternatively:

- 1 In the MiniBar, click Start.
- 2 Select EHT Off.



3 Select Start/Vent from the MiniBar.

4.1.3. Evacuating the specimen chamber

To continue operation after a specimen exchange, the specimen chamber has to be evacuated again.

- 1 In the toolbar, click **Specimen Change**.
- 2 Confirm the message 'Press OK To Pump'.

Alternatively:

Alternatively:

1

2

1 In the Vacuum tab, click **Pump**.

In the status bar, click Vac:.

Select **Pump** from the pop-up menu.





Alternatively:

1 Select **Start/Pump** from the MiniBar.



4.1.4. Working with variable pressure (VP instruments only)

Working with variable pressure (VP) allows you to analyse and image non-conducting, strongly gassing or humid specimens. This is made possible by a special pumping system, which allows setting partial pressures of 1 to 133 Pa in the specimen chamber, while preserving the ultra high vacuum in gun area and beam path.

Using VP mode is only possible with a VP type SEM/FESEM.

4.1.4.1. Switching to variable pressure (VP) mode

1 Go to the VP Control tab of the SEM Controlss panel.

| EM Controls | | | | | * | |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|---------------|--------|------------|--|
| Detecto | irs | Sca | anning | (| Vacuum | |
| Gun | Aper | tures | Stag | ge 🔰 | VP Control | |
| Syste Vent i Vac S EHT V | em Vac nhibit = Status = Vac rea ump | uum = 2 None At Air ady = Y | 2.00e-(es | 002 mb | par ent | |
| Partial Vent on Standby | | | | | | |
| - VP Cont | to HV | @ Shut | down Pa | | | |
| VP Ta | arget = IIII Iber Sta | 10 Pa | a t HV | | 4 | |
| Go | To HV | | [| Go | ToVP | |
| VP Cont | rol | | | | | |

2 Select a VP target by using the slider.

Alternatively: Double-click the *VP Target* field and enter the pressure value.

3 Click Go To VP.

| VP Control | |
|------------------------|---|
| 🔲 Go to HV @ Shutdown | |
| Chamber = 100000 Pa | |
| VP Target = 10 Pa | |
| Chamber Status = at HV | |
| Go To HV Go To VP |) |



IMPORTANT

In VP mode, InLens detector and SE2 detector cannot be used. Instead, backscattered electron detectors or specially designed VPSE detectors should be selected.

4.1.4.2. Returning to high vacuum (HV) mode

1 Click Go To HV.

The vacuum in the specimen chamber is reduced to high vacuum conditions.

| VP Control | Σ | |
|------------------------|----------|--|
| | | |
| Chamber = 100 Pa | | |
| VP Target = 100 Pa | | |
| Go To HV | Go To VP | |
| Collector Bias = 380 V | | |

4.2. Navigating the specimen

4.2.1. Moving the specimen with the soft joystick

Alternatively to the dual joystick, you can navigate the specimen by using the software function **Soft joystick**. This function is helpful when you wish to move a single axis without the risk of moving another axis as well.

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click Soft Joystick.

The Soft Joystick panel opens.

3 Move the stage by using the respective sliders or the red marker in the navigation box.

To stop the moving stage:

1 Release the slider.

To stop the moving stage immediately:

1 Type <F12>.

Alternatively:

Click Stage stop in the Stage tab of the SEM Controlss panel.

When tilting a specimen ensure that the specimen to be analysed is always the one next to the objective lens.



IMPORTANT

To prevent damage, a touch alarm is integrated in the SEM/FESEM: If specimen or sample holder touch chamber walls, detectors or objective lens, the stage is stopped immediately. An audible warning and an on-screen message are given.



4.2.2. Moving the specimen at high magnifications (Beam Shift)

The **Beam Shift** function is helpful when moving the specimen at magnifications above 100,000 x. At this magnification range it is generally difficult to exactly position an image feature by driving the stage. Therefore, the image of the specimen can be moved by shifting the electron beam instead of displacing the specimen itself.

1 Select Beam/Beam Shift from the menu.

The **Beam Shift** panel is shown.



Alternatively: Select Tools/Goto Control Panel/Apertures.

- 2 Click Beam Shift.
- 3 Use the red marker in the navigation box or the sliders to position the specimen.

The left mouse button is assigned to Beam Shift X and Y. The middle mouse button keeps the current assignment.

The electron beam can be shifted by \pm 7.5 μ m in the X and Y directions.

4.2.2.1. Working with an expanded beam shift (licence: LARGE-BEAMSHIFT)

When you use different apertures sizes it might be helpful to move the image of the specimen by means of the beam shift function instead of moving the specimen itself. For this reason the range of the beam shift has to be enlarged.

Requires the licence LARGE-BEAMSHIFT. Requires particular hardware.

- 1 Open the **SEM** status.
- 2 Go to the **Select** tab.
- 3 Tick the Large Beamshift checkbox.

The electron beam can be shifted by +/- 100 μm in the X and Y directions.

4.2.3. Improving stage repeatability by activating the function

is employed to take up the necessary mechanical play in the stage motors, so that any absolute stage position is always approached from the same direction, improving the repeatability of motorised stage movement.

- 1 Go to the Stage tab of the SEM Controlss panel.
- 2 Right-click in the **Stage** tab.
- A submenu opens.
- 3 Select /On.

| SEM Control | | ۲ |
|----------------------------|-----------|--------------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
| Stage At | Go To | Delta |
| X 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | |
| Y 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | |
| Z 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | Z |
| T 0.0 * | 0.0 * | T |
| R 0.0 * | 0.0 * | R |
| M 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | M |
| Stage Is = Idle | | |
| Compuc. Mode | = Off | |
| Z move on \ | /ent Stag | eXY+Z |
| Track Z | | tick Disable |
| | 0093 | |
| Protected Z | Un | do GoTo |
| Safe Z = 30.000 | Imm Sta | age stop |
| | | |
| Auto Initialise St | age | \frown |
| Backlash | | On |
| Limits Contro Doint / E | | Do Backlas |
| Calibrate Stage | Centre | |
| Compucentric He | eiaht | |
| Horizontal Alignm | nent | |
| Record | • | |

4.2.4. Compensating for image drift by shifting the beam (licence: DRIFT CORR)

The drift correction is a program to compensate for the drift of the specimen by using a reference image and by controlling the beam shift. This function has two main applications:

- Improvement of the drive precision of the stage
 When viewing a specific image section and driving the stage to another point, a drift is often observed when moving back to the specific point.
- Long-term analysis If an image section is scanned for a longer time, mechanical, thermal and electrical effects will always cause a drift of the respective image section.

It is essential to find a striking detail of the specimen to be defined as a reference image. This detail will be sought later on in the current image by using image analytical algorithms. Requires the licence DRIFT CORR and the installation of the Matrox Imaging Library, which is protected by a dongle.

1 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM. SEM/FESEM: Select Drift Prepare. XB: Select SEM Drift Correction.

The Drift Correction window opens.

| ft Correction | |
|--|---|
| SEM Drift Reference Image Display Rectangle Hide Rectangle Create Reference | |
| Sem drift status = No Reference | e I Drift Corrn |
| Settings Drift Max Pix Error = 1 < III > Drift Min Conf = 50.0 % < III > Drift Max Tries = 5 < III > Default Settings Period conft Correction Period (s) 300 | Beam Shift X 0.00 nm Y 0.00 nm Zero Beam Shift Go to Reference Options Use Stage Field Search Auto Brightness |

2 Click Display Rectangle.

A movable frame is shown. The image range inside the frame defines the reference image for the drift correction.

 Change position and size of the frame to define a striking detail as reference image.
 The reference image should present a good signal-to-noise ratio.

Do not use Frame Avg, Line Avg as noise reduction methods.

- 4 In order to cancel any beam shift settings, click **Zero Beam Shift**.
- 5 If you wish to hide the frame, click **Hide Rectangle**.

| SEM Drift Reference Image Display Rectangle Hide Rectangle Create Reference | |
|---|---|
| Sem drift status = No Reference | e Drift Corm |
| Settings Drift Max.Pix.Error = 1 (III) Drift Min Conf = 50.0 % (III) Drift Max.Tries = 5 (III) Default Settings | Beam Shift X 0.00 nm Y 0.00 nm Zero Beam Shift Go to Reference Options |
| Periodic Drift Correction Period (s) 300 | Use Stage Field Search Auto Brightness |

- 6 Set the following parameters:
 - a Drift Max. Pix. Error = Drift maximum pix-

el error

Defines the precision of the drift correction. Indicates the largest allowed pixel distance between the current image and the corrected image. If this pixel distance is exceeded, the drift correction will not be accepted.

For most applications this parameter should be set to 1 to 4.

b Drift Max. Tries = Drift maximum tries

Defines how often the algorithm will try to compensate a possible image drift by using the beam shift.

For most applications this parameter should be set to 5 to 15.

c Drift Min. Conf. = Drift minimum confidence

Defines the precision of the correlation between reference image and found image section. For most applications this parameter should be set to *40%* to *60%*.

7 Click Create Reference.

A reference is acquired. In the field **Sem drift status** 'Ready' is indicated. The button **Do SEM Drift Corrn** becomes available.

8 Click **Do SEM Drift Corrn**.

If the drift correction was successful, 'Success' is indicated in the field SEM drift status .

| ft Correction | |
|--|---|
| SEM Dritt Reference Image Display Rectangle Hide Rectangle Create Reference | |
| Sem drift status = Ready | Drift Corrn |
| Settings Drift Max.Pix.Error = 1 (IIII)) Drift Min Conf = 50.0 % (IIII) Drift Max.Trise = 10 (IIIII) Default Settings Default Settings Period c Drift Correction Period (s) 300 | Beam Shift X 0.00 nm Y 0.00 nm Zero Beam Shift Go to Reference Options Use Stage Field Search Auto Brightness |

4.2.5. Using fisheye mode (licence: FISHEYE)

Fisheye mode allows you to get a survey of the complete specimen chamber by providing a top view on the sample holder at a low Z. Requires the licence FISHEYE.

- 1 Select **Tools/Goto Control Panel** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the Aperture tab.
- 3 Tick the Fisheye Mode checkbox.

| Detecto | rs Scan | ning | Gur | n Vacuum |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------|-------|----------|
| Gun | Apertures | Stag | ge | Vacuum |
| Aperture (1)30 | Size .00 μm - Stan | dard | | ~ |
| - Focu | s Wobble | |]Wob | ble Fast |
| Wobble | Amplitude = | 41.1 % | | > |
| 🔽 Bean | n Blanked | | Er | nission |
| Mag / | Focus A | perture / | Align | |
| Apertur | e Align | | | ~ |
| Gun | Align | | ┢── | |
| Stigm | ation | | | ~ |
| Beam | Shift < | | ш] | >0 |
| | | | | |



IMPORTANT

Since the image is deformed due to the fisheye lens effect, measurements and the exact specification of the magnification are not possible. Therefore, a question mark is shown next to the micron marker.


- 1 To quit Fisheye mode, untick the **Fisheye mode** checkbox.
- 2 Under TV control, carefully drive the stage to the required Z.

4.2.6. Using the stage navigation functions

The Stage Navigation has the following characteristics:

- Plan view of the sample holder
- Display of the specimen chamber with chamber door
- Display of the stage hard limits
- Support for all different Carl Zeiss sample holders
- Ability to zoom in to view the sample holder in great detail Requires the licence COMPU.

.

IMPORTANT This function requires the stage to be initialised.

4.2.6.1. Showing the specimen chamber schematics

1 Select **Stage/Navigation** from the menu.

Alternatively:

Double-click Stage Navigation in the Panel Configuration Bar.

The Stage Navigation window opens.

The top window shows the lateral view of the stage inside the specimen chamber. The bottom window shows the plan view of the stage.

| Stage Navigation | | | × |
|------------------|----|--|--------------|
| ∇ | x | 85.335 mm | Delta |
| | Y | 66.241 mm | XY |
| | z | 0.000 mm | z |
| | т | 4.0 ° | Т |
| | R | 0.0 * | R |
| | | - Stage sto | op |
| | | e Stage sto Z move on Vent] Track Z | q |
| | Sz | Protected Z Sample Protection | usel 9 stub |
| (0+0) | S | pecimen eight 0 mm Di | ameter 10 mm |
| | | Settings. | |
| | | More stage funct | ionality |



2 Select your type of sample holder from the **Sample Holder** drop-down list.

- 3 You can change the view:
 - a To zoom in, move the zoom control slider to the right (*1*).
 - b To change the detail, use the lateral sliders (2).
 - c To toggle the size of the window, click the << button.
- 4 To move the stage, double-click the sample position you wish to move under the electron beam.
- 5 To access the stage navigation settings, click **Settings** (*3*).



The Stage Nav Settings dialog opens.

| ample Holder properties | Holder Rotation C |)ffset Calibration — |
|--|-------------------|----------------------|
| Show Gallery | Holder Rot. Offse | et = 12.0 ° |
| Stage Centre Calibration | | |
| Stage Centre X = 65.000 mm | Spacer Thickness | |
| Shi an Caraba V = SE 000 == | 0 mm | 🔘 54 mm |
| Stage Centre Y = 65.000 mm | 🔘 27 mm | 🔘 81 mm |
| Calibrate Stage Centre | O other: | 0.000 mm |
| Stage Height Calibration | | |
| Lens to Flat = 20.300 mm | Spacer Offset | |
| Focus on the stub and do bysteresis | 0 mm | |
| correction <shift +="" f2=""> first.</shift> | O 25 mm | 🔘 50 mm |
| Calibrate | O other: | 0.000 mm |

4.2.6.2. Using the Sample Holder Gallery

The Sample Holder Gallery lets you inspect the dimensions of all possible sample holders. Additionally, it allows setting of the dimensions of custom stage holders.

- 1 Select **Stage/Navigation** from the menu.
- 2 Click Settings.
- 3 Click Show Gallery.



- 4 Select the installed sample holder from the list of icons on the left. The **Is available** checkbox is ticked to indicate that the selected sample holder can be installed on the system.
- 5 If you use a custom sample holder:
 - a Select one of the custom sample holders.
 - b Enter the individual dimensions of your sample holder.
 - c Tick the **Is available** checkbox.

4.2.7. Eucentrically driving a non-eucentric stage (licence: COMPU)

This function allows rotation-eucentric and tilt-eucentric control of a non-eucentric stage by using software.

Requires the licence COMPU.

Different calibration procedures are required before the compucentric software can be used:

- Calibration of the rotation centre of the stage (required for rotation-eucentric control and tilt-eucentric control)
- Calibration of the distance between specimen surface and rotation centre of the tilt axis (additionally required for tilt-eucentric control)

4.2.7.1. Calibrating the stage centre

It is a prerequisite for all compucentric functions that the centre of the stage rotation is accurately known. This will normally only need to be performed once each time the stage is serviced. However, to achieve the ultimate accuracy it may be necessary to recalibrate the rotation centre each time the stage is initialised.

IMPORTANT

The calibration of the rotation centre is independent of the used sample holder and the used specimen. Therefore, this calibration can be use generally.

It is recommended that you use a single stub holder and a calibration grid or a TEM grid as specimen. The specimen must be mounted centrally on the stub.

1 Initialise the stage:

Select Stage/Stage Initialise and confirm.

- 2 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 3 Double-click Calibrate Stage Centre.

Alternatively:

- a Go to the **Stage** tab of the **SEM Controlss** panel.
- b Right-click in the background of the Stage tab.
- c Select Calibrate Stage Centre.

The Calibrate Stage Centre dialog opens.

The last coordinates of the centre are indicated.

4 Click Next.

The stage is initialised.

After initialisation, a magnification of 30 x is automatically set. Crosshairs are displayed.

- 5 Select a striking feature on the specimen surface, that is positioned outside the centre.
- 6 Move the striking feature to the centre by using the joystick or the **Centre Point** function.
- 7 Click Next.

The stage is driven back to its initial position.

| Calibrate Stage Centre | × |
|--|---------------------|
| Centre: Pos X (mm) 65.000 | ОК |
| Centre: Pos Y (mm) 65.000 | Cancel |
| Instructions Please insert calibration grid in sample holder. Once fitted clid NEXT button. | to the ck on the |
| <-Back Next-> | |

| Calibrate Stage Centre | × |
|---|---------------|
| Centre: Pos X (mm) 65.000 | ОК |
| Centre: Pos Y (mm) 65.000 | Cancel |
| Centre point a distinguishable done click on the Next button | mark. When |
| <-Back Next-> | Load defaults |

| Calibrate Stage Centre | × |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Centre: Pos X (mm) 65.000 | ОК |
| Centre: Pos Y (mm) 65.000 | Cancel |
| Instructions | |
| A rotate of 180 degrees clock happen. Watch selected mar carefully. Click NEXT button I | wise will k very to continue. |
| <-Back Next-> | |

8 Click Next.

The stage rotates by 180°. During stage rotation observe the striking feature on the specimen in order to be able to relocate it after rotation. 9 Again, move the striking feature to the centre by using joystick or the Centre Point function.



10 Confirm by clicking on Next.

11 Click Next.

The software has now calculated the new rotation centre and indicates the values for X and Y.

| Calibrate Stage Centre | × |
|--|----------------------------|
| Centre: Pos X (mm) 0.000 | ОК |
| Centre: Pos Y (mm) | Cancel |
| - Instructions | |
| Centre point found - to continu the centre point position click I button. Otherwise click OK but | e refining NEXT ton. |
| <-Back Next-> | |

12 Set the next higher magnification (200 x).

The stage returns to the initial position.

- 13 Repeat the calibration procedure (steps 5 to 11).
- 14 Repeat the procedure for the magnifications 500 x, 1500 x and 2000 x.
- 15 After having calibrated the position with Mag = 2000 x, click **OK**.

This will finish the calibration routine.

The calculated calibration values are used for stage navigation and eucentric movement.

4.2.7.2. Calibrating the compucentric height

If you want to tilt the specimen eucentrically or if you want to rotate a tilted specimen eucentrically, the software has to accurately know the distance between rotation centre of the tilt axis and specimen surface.

This is managed by the additional calibration of the compucentric height.



IMPORTANT

As the calibrated distance depends on specimen and sample holder, this routine must be performed separately for each specimen and sample holder.

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click Compucentric Height.
- 3 Follow the steps on the panel:
 - a Centre a feature and click Read.
 - b Tilt the stage.
 - c Centre the feature again and click **Calculate**.
- 4 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

| Compucentric Height : | X | | | |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| 1) Centre a feature then press Read | | | | |
| Read Stage Backlash | | | | |
| 2) Tilt the stage | | | | |
| Tilt To | | | | |
| 8 🚖 🛛 Tilt 🛛 Go Back | | | | |
| Nudge size | | | | |
| 0.05 Up Down | | | | |
| Stage stop | | | | |
| 3) Centre it again, and press calculate — | | | | |
| Compu. Height = 0.000 mm | ٦ | | | |
| Compu. Tilt Error = 0.2664 | - | | | |
| | | | | |
| Calculate Estimate from WD | | | | |
| Load OK Cancel |] | | | |

4.2.7.3. Activating the compucentric software functions

Prerequisite: The compucentric software has been calibrated properly. Refer to section 4.2.7.1. and section 4.2.7.2.



IMPORTANT

The more precisely and thoroughly the calibration is done, the more precisely the stage can be driven by the compucentric software.



IMPORTANT

If only the stage centre has been calibrated, only rotation-eucentric control in the horizontal line (Tilt = 0) will be possible.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Stage tab.

| 3 | In the drop-down menu Compuc. Mode, |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| | select the desired mode: |

Off: Disables the compucentric software

Tilt: Enables tilt-eucentric control

Rotate: Enables rotation-eucentric control

Tilt & Rot. Rotation- and tilt-eucentric control

| Detectors | Scanning G | un Vacuum |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| Gun Aper | tures Stage | Vacuum |
| Stage At | Go To | Delta |
| × 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | |
| Y 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | |
| Z 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | Ζ |
| T _4.0 * | 0.0 * | T |
| R 0.0 * | 0.0 * | R |
| M 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | M |
| Stage Is = Idle | e = Tilt | |
| Off Tilt Rotate Tilt & Rot. | 5 – T IK | able |
| Protected Z | Undo | GoTo |

CAUTION

Danger of malfunction of the stage, when using the joystick. After activating the compucentric software functions, only drive the stage to absolute or relative coordinates. To do so, use the 'Go To' fields or the 'Delta' buttons.

4.2.7.4. Stage Horizontal Alignment

This function allows you to automatically move an image feature in the horizontal line. The stage centre must be calibrated.

A wizard is used to drive the stage such that a linear feature on the specimen, identified by two points, is horizontal with the second of the two points visible on screen.

- 1 Open the **Panel Configuration Bar**.
- 2 Double-click Stage Horizontal Alignment.

The Stage Horizontal Alignment wizard opens.

Crosshairs are displayed.

- 3 Centre the first reference point. To do so, use the joystick or the Centre point function.
- 4 Click Next.

| 5 | Centre the second reference point. | |
|---|------------------------------------|--|

6 Click Next.

| | | ince point to |
|----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| orizontal - utton | align. When do | ne click 'NEXT' |
| actori | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



7 Click Finish.

| age Horizontal Alignment | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Instructions | |
| Alignment complete. Click Fir | iish button. |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| C. David | Const |
| <- Back Finish | Lancel |

4.2.8. Saving and recalling stage coordinates (licence: STAGECO)

This function offers the possibility to save a list of stage positions together with magnification and working distance. Thus, the user can recall these positions easily. Requires the licence STAGECO.

4.2.8.1. Saving and editing stage coordinates

- 1 Select Stage/Store/Recall from the menu.
- 2 To enter the current stage position, click on **Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and confirm.

| Label Request 🛛 🔀 |
|-----------------------|
| Please enter a label: |
| Position 1 |
| |
| UK Cancel |

The stage position is displayed on the Stage Position List.

- 4 To edit a stage position, mark the position and click Edit.
- 5 To delete a stage position, mark the position and click **Delete**.

4.2.8.2. Recalling stage coordinates

- 1 To move the stage to a stored position:
 - a Select the position.
 - b Click **On Goto**.

To cancel the last stage move, click **Undo Stage Goto**.

4.2.9. Centering a spot or an area (licence: CENTRE)

This function offers the following possibilities:

- Point: Allows marking a spot in the image which is then automatically moved to the centre of the image area.
- Feature: Allows selecting a feature or area in the image which is automatically centered and magnified so that the selected feature fills the complete image area.

Requires the licence CENTRE.

4.2.9.1. Using the Centre Point function

1 Select **Stage/Centre Point** from the menu. Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + Tab>**.

The mouse cursor is displayed as a cross.

- 2 Place the cross on the interesting feature.
- 3 Click.

The feature is being moved to the centre of the image area.

4 To quit this function, right-click.

4.2.9.2. Using the Continuous Centre Point function

If selected, the software remains in centre point mode after each point selection allowing repetitive centre point actions.

- 1 Select Stage/Continuous Centre Point from the menu.
- 2 To quit this function, right-click.

4.2.9.3. Using the Centre feature function

Select Stage/Centre Feature from the menu.
 Alternatively, type <Ctrl + Shift + Tab>.

The mouse cursor is displayed as a cross.

- 2 Place the cross on the interesting feature.
- 3 Drag the mouse to open a frame, which comprises the area of interest.
- 4 Click.

The feature range is being moved to the centre of the image area and magnified.

5 To quit this function, right-click.

4.2.10. Using Stage Map (licence: CENTRE)

This function allows using a frozen image in the left zone (zone 0) as an overview for the selection of interesting features on the specimen surface. Requires the licence CENTRE.

- 1 Select a low magnification.
- 2 Move the stage to the interesting specimen area.

This setting will be used as stage map.

- 3 Select **Scanning/Split** in order to change to spot mode.
- 4 Select Stage/Stage Map.

The left zone (zone 0) is frozen and serves as an overview.



5 Select a feature of interest in the left zone by placing the cross and clicking.

In the right zone (zone 1), the selected feature is displayed. You can modify the image, e.g. magnify as required.

4.2.11. Scanning defined image fields (licence: STAGESCAN)

This function allows you to scan an exactly defined series of regularly distributed image fields. This is useful when searching for particles or other objects in a large sample range, as it is ensured that no part of the interesting area will be omitted.

Four scan patterns and several methods are available to determine the scan range. Requires the licence STAGESCAN.

1 Select Stage/Stage Scan from the menu.

The Stage Scanning window opens.

- 2 Define the stage scan fields:
 - a Click Setup Wizard.
 - b Follow the instructions given in the wizard.





4.2.12. Toggling between survey view and detail view (licence: SURVEY)

This function offers the possibility to save two different settings for magnification and working distance and to switch between these settings. The settings are called *Survey Mode* (provides a survey view) and *Resolution Image* (provides a detail view). Requires the licence SURVEY.

4.2.12.1. Entering survey view and detail view settings

Survey view settings

1 Set the survey view settings:

Set a low magnification and a large working distance to achieve a wide field of view.

- 2 Select **Stage/Survey/Settings** from the menu.
- 3 Enter the desired settings in the **Survey Mode** field:
 - a To automatically set the lowest possible magnification, tick the **Lowest Mag** radio button.
 - b To take the current magnification and WD settings, click the **Get Current** buttons.

You can also manually enter the desired values.

- 4 Select additional functions:
 - a Tick the Remember Changes checkbox.

When switching to **Survey Mode** State, especially for the first time, it may be necessary to adjust focus.

When **Remember changes** is ticked, the new working distance as a result of focusing will replace the target WD in the settings.

- b To start an automatic focus adjustment after start of the respective operation mode, tick the **Auto Focus** checkbox.
- c To execute a macro, tick the **Macro** checkbox and select a macro from the drop-down list.

| Stage Survey | | |
|-----------------------------|---------|-------------|
| Survey Mode O Lowest Mag | , | |
| ⊙ Mag> | 100 | Get Current |
| WD | 8 | Get Current |
| Remember | Changes | Auto Focus |
| Macro | | ~ |
| Resolution Ima | ging | |
| Mag | | Get Current |
| WD | | Get Current |
| Auto Focus | 5 | |
| Macro | | ~ |
| Exit Survey Mo | ide | |
| Macro | | ▼ |
| Survey Mode | í. | Off |
| Load | | Save |
| | | |

Detail view settings

5 Enter the detail view settings:

Set a higher magnification and a smaller WD.

- 6 Enter the desired settings in the Resolution Imaging field:
 Click the Get Current buttons after Mag and WD.
- 7 Select additional functions:
 - a If you wish to start an automatic focus adjustment after the respective operation mode, tick the **Auto Focus** checkbox.
 - b To execute a macro, tick the **Macro** checkbox and select a macro from the drop-down list.

| Stage Survey | | × |
|-----------------------------|---------|-------------|
| Survey Mode O Lowest Mar | g | |
| ⊙ Mag> | 100 | Get Current |
| WD | 8 | Get Current |
| Remember | Changes | Auto Posus |
| Macro | | |
| Resolution Ima | aging | X |
| Mag | | Get Current |
| WD | | Get Current |
| 🗌 Auto Focu | s | |
| Macro | | ∼ |
| Exit Survey Mo | ode | |
| Macro | | × |
| Survey Mode | | Off |
| Load | | Save |

If you wish to execute a macro when quitting Survey Mode:

- a In the Exit Survey Mode field, tick the Macro checkbox.
- b Select a macro from the drop-down list.

| Macro | TB REDUCED | ~ |
|-------------|------------|--------|
| Survey Mode | | Survey |
| Load | | Save |

4.2.12.2. Activating the Survey Mode function



IMPORTANT

This function requires the stage to be initialised.

1 Tick the **Survey Mode** checkbox.

Alternatively: Select **Stage/Survey/Survey Mode** from the menu.

2 To quit Survey Mode, untick the **Survey Mode** checkbox.

Alternatively:

Select **Stage/Survey/Survey Mode** in order to untick the function in the menu.

| tage Survey | | | X |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|----|
| Survey Mode – | 1 | | |
| ⊙ Mag> | 100 | Get Current | |
| WD | 7.8 | Get Current | |
| Remember | Changes | Auto Focus | |
| Macro | | ~ | |
| Resolution Ima | ging | | 51 |
| Mag | 1000 | Get Current | |
| WD | 8.3 | Get Current | |
| 🗹 Auto Focus | ; | | |
| Macro | | ~ | |
| Exit Survey Mo | de TB RED | DUCED | |
| Survey Mode | | Survey | _ |
| Load | | Save | |

4.2.13. Defining a user specific coordinate system (licence: STAGEREG)

This function offers the possibility to define a user specific 2D coordinate system based on three reference points. Within this coordinate system, the stage can move to specific spots on the specimen, while the stage coordinates can be saved.

Requires the licence STAGEREG.



If there are three spots on the specimen, whose distances to the saved stage coordinates are defined, these spots can be used as reference points.

It is possible to create up to nine different coordinate systems.

- 1 Ensure the stage has been initialised.
- 2 Load a suitable specimen e.g. a chessy.
- 3 Open the **Panel Configuration Bar**.
- 4 Double-click Stage Registration.

The Stage Registration window opens.

| tage List = Reg 1 | ~ | Registration = No | |
|----------------------|------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| Registration Details | | Registered Move | |
| Name: | | Sample at X = 0.0000 | Sample Goto X = 0.0000 |
| Units:(X,Y) | | Sample at Y = 0.0000 | Sample Goto Y = 0.0000 |
| Tilt (Deg): 0 | Goto | Stage Backlash | Backlash Warning |
| Rotation (Deg): 0 | Goto | | 2 |
| Setup Registrat | ion | | |
| Load From File Sa | ve To File | | 4 |
| Register | | | 3 |

5 Under Stage List, select a new coordinate system.

- 6 Enter a name.
- 7 Click Setup Registration.

The Stage Registration window opens.

- 8 To show crosshairs, tick the **Crosshairs** checkbox.
- 9 Select an alignment mark on the specimen.
- 10 Enter the coordinates.
- 11 Move the stage to the selected alignment mark.
- 12 Click Next.

| Registration Point Point 1: Select an align enter the coordinates, selected mark is centre | ment mark on the sample and Move the stage until the ed, then press Next |
|---|--|
| Sample position | 0 |
| Sample position | 0 |
| Stage at X = 0.000 | mm |
| Crosshairs | |
| Stage Backlash | |
| << Previous | Finish 2 pt Next>> Cancel |

- 13 Repeat steps 7 to 10 for the second registration point.
- 14 Repeat steps 7 to 10 for the third registration point.
- 15 Click Finish.



4.3. Setting SEM conditions

4.3.1. Controlling the gun

4.3.1.1. Switching on the gun

- 1 Select **Tools/Goto Control Panel** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Gun Vacuum** tab. Check that *EHT Vac ready*=Yes is indicated.

| SEM Contr | ol | | (| <u>م</u> |
|-----------|----------------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | e Vacuu | ım |
| Detecto | rs Scann | iing | Gun Vacuu | m |
| System | Vacuum = 1.94 | 1e-006 m | Bar | |
| Gun Va | cuum = 2.46e-l | 010 mBa | r | |
| Vent inh | iibit = None | | | |
| Vac Sta | tus = Ready | | | |
| Column | Chamber valve | e = Open | l. | |
| EHT Va | c ready = Yes | | | _ |
| Column | pumping = Rea | ady | | |
| | Pump | | Vent | |
| | Partial Ven | t on Star | idby | |



4 Select **Gun On** from the pop-up menu.

The gun is being run up.



4.3.1.2. Switching off the gun

It is recommended leaving the gun on during the working week. This should help optimise life time of the Schottky field emitter.

Only at longer breaks such as weekends or holidays you should switch off the gun.

- 1 In the status bar, click All:.
- 2 Select **Shutdown Gun** from the pop-up menu.



4.3.2. Controlling the EHT

4.3.2.1. Switching on the EHT

The electrons emitted by the gun have to be accelerated by applying the acceleration voltage EHT.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Gun tab.

Setting the EHT

3 Set the acceleration voltage:a Double-click in the EHT= field.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|-----------------|-----------|-------|
| EHT = 0.00 | kV | |
| Extractor V = | 4.72 kV | |
| Extractor I = 1 | 159.70 µA | |
| Fill = 2.370. | A | |
| Beam State = | EHT Off | ~ |

b Enter the desired value (kV).

| (kV) | OK |
|------|-------|
| 10 | |
| | Cance |

c Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



IMPORTANT

The In-lens detector can be used up to an acceleration voltage of 20 kV. At higher acceleration voltages the efficiency of the In-lens detector will be markedly reduced.



IMPORTANT

SUPRATM 25 only: To be able to set a value below 0.5 kV, the licence LOWVOLTS is required. To be able to set a value from 20 kV to 30 kV, the licence EXTVOLTS is required. Switching on 4 Switch on the EHT:

- a In the status bar, click EHT.
- b Select EHT On from the pop-up menu.



Alternatively: Select **Beam/EHT On** from the menu.

The EHT (acceleration voltage) is run up to the set value. The status bar buttons are pushed together, and the **All:** button appears.

4.3.2.2. Switching off the EHT

- 1 In the status bar, click All.
- 2 Select EHT Off from the pop-up menu.



Alternatively:

Select Beam/EHT Off from the menu.

4.3.3. Blanking the beam

To protect sensitive specimens from the electron beam, you can blank the beam.



IMPORTANT

This procedure does not refer to the optional Beam Blanker for MERLINTM. For information on the optional MERLINTM Beam Blanker, refer to the Instruction Manual Beam Blanker delivered with the Beam Blanker.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Apertures tab.

Alternatively: Select **Beam/Aperture** from the menu.

3 Tick the **Beam Blanked** checkbox.

| EM Control | _ | _ | | (|
|-----------------------|---------|----------|-----------|----|
| Detectors Scann | ng | Gu | in Vacuum | 1 |
| Gun Apertures | Sta | ge | Vacuum | ĺ. |
| Aperture Size | | | | |
| (1) 30.00 μm - Standa | ard | | * | |
| Focus Wobble | | Wo | bble Fast | |
| Wobble Amplitude = 4 | 1.1 % | | 5 | |
| | | | | |
| Beam Blanked | | E | mission | |
| Mag / Focus Aper | ture Al | lign | | |
| Acostus Alian | | | ~ | |
| Aperture Align | | | | |
| Gun Align | | <u> </u> | | |
| Chinashian | | | | |
| Sugmation | | | ~ | |
| Beam Shift | | iii.] | >0 | |
| V Hig | h Cur | rent | | |

4.3.4. Modifying the probe current

The probe current (beam brightness) is determined by aperture size and extractor voltage. Moreover, it can be increased by using the high current mode.

Depending on your application, choose one of these three possibilities to modify the probe current.

Using the option OptiProbe offers the possibility to automatically set the probe current.

4.3.4.1. Changing the aperture size

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Aperture tab.

Alternatively:

Select **Beam/Aperture** from the menu.

3 Click in the **Aperture Size** field and select an aperture from the drop-down menu.

Standard aperture is a multihole aperture with a central 30 μ m aperture hole which is suitable for most applications.

Large apertures (120 μ m, 60 μ m diameter) are used for certain applications that require a high beam brightness, e.g. EDX, or a large depth of field.

Small apertures (20 μ m, 10 μ m, 7.5 μ m diameter) are suitable for high resolution imaging or current-sensitive specimens.

4 Continue with aligning the newly set aperture as described in section 4.3.5.

| Detectors | Scanning | Gur | Vacuum |
|----------------|-----------|--------|---------|
| Gun Apert | ures S | tage | Vacuum |
| Aperture Size | | | |
| (1) 30.00 μm - | Standard | | ~ |
| (1) 30.00 µm - | Standard | | |
| (3) 10.00 µm | | | |
| (4)20.00 µm | | | |
| [5]60.00 µm | | | |
| < | | | Σ |
| Ream Blanks | d | En | viscion |
| Deam Dianke | 0 | | 1331011 |
| Mag / Focus | Aperture. | Align | |
| | | T | ~ |
| Aperture Align | | | |
| | | | |
| Gun Align | | 1 | |
| Chigmation | | | |
| Sugmadori | | | ~ |
| Beam Shift | < | Luu | >0 |
| | High Cu | urrent | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | Coarse | AII- |

4.3.4.2. Changing the extractor voltage

The extractor voltage is preset by the factory, respectively by the Carl Zeiss service engineer. Within certain limits, the operator may carefully alter the extractor voltage in order to optimise the probe current for particular applications.

1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel from

the menu.

2 Go to the **Gun** tab.

| 2 Go to the Gun tab. | Detectors Scanning Gun Vacuum |
|---|-------------------------------|
| | Gun Apertures Stage Vacuum |
| | EHT = 0.00 kV |
| | Extractor V = 3.00 kV |
| | Extractor I = 200.00 µA |
| | Fill = 2.000 A |
| | Beam State = EHT Off 🛛 💉 |
| 3 Use the arrow buttons of the Extractor V | Leave Gun On at Shutdown |
| Target slider to increase the extractor voltage. | 🗹 EHT Off @ Log Off |
| | Fill Target = 2.000 A |
| Increasing the extractor voltage may be suitable to increase the probe current. | Extractor V Target = 3.00 kV |
| | EHT Target = 20.00 kV |
| | |

Target slider to increase the ext

CAUTION

Performance and resolution of the SEM/FESEM can be impaired. Avoid reducing the extractor voltage. If at all, reduce the extractor voltage only for a short time (1-2 h) and by maximum 500 V.



IMPORTANT

The newly set extractor voltage is only valid for the current work session. After a restart of the SmartSEM[®] software, the SEM/FESEM will restore the nominal voltage.

4.3.4.3. Using high current mode (licence: HIGH CURRENT)

High current mode increases the active probe current. This is obtained by a stronger activation of the condenser lens.

Typical applications are images with a large depth of field.

Requires the licence HIGH CURRENT. Not available with SUPRA[™] 25.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Apertures tab.

Alternatively: Select **Beam/Aperture** from the menu.

3 Tick the High Current checkbox.

To quit high current mode, untick the **High Current** checkbox.

| Detector | s Scanr | ning | Gun Va | cuum |
|--|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------|-------|
| un | Apertures | Stage | Va | cuum |
| perture | Size | | | _ |
| 1)30. | 00 μm - Stand | lard | | ~ |
| 1 | | | (-bble C | |
| | s woddie | | V ODDIE I | -as(|
| Vobble | Amplitude = | 41.1 % | | |
| < | | | | > |
| Ream | Displand | | E | |
| Deam | biankeu | | Emissi | on |
| | | ـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ | Emissi | on |
| Mag / F | Focus Ape | rture Align | Emissio | |
| Mag / f | Focus Ape | rture Align | | |
| Mag / F | Focus Ape | rture Align | Emissi | |
| Mag / F Aperture Gun / | Focus Ape e Align | rture Align | | |
| Mag / F Aperture Gun / | Focus Ape e Align | rture Align | | - (=) |
| Mag / f Aperture Gun / Stigme | Focus Ape e Align Align | rture Align | | |

4.3.4.4. Continuously modifying the probe current (licence: OPTIPROBE)

OptiProbe allows you to continuously adjust the probe current.

The function automatically selects a suitable aperture and the current mode while the extractor voltage is adjusted to meet the probe current selected by the user.

Requires the licences OPTIPROBE and HIGH VOLTAGE.

Requires particular hardware as well as the installation of the specimen current amplifier. Not available with SUPRA[™] 25.

- 1 Select **Tools/Goto Control Panel** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Gun** tab.

| 3 | Tick the OptiProbe checkbox. | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
|---|-------------------------------------|--|

4 Use the **I Probe** slider to set the desired probe current.

As soon as the probe current adjustment is finished, the status display changes from *Busy* to *Ready*.

The indicated probe current **I Probe=** corresponds to the actual probe current (+/- 15 %).

5 To deactivate the function, untick the OptiProbe checkbox.
 Even if OptiProbe is deactivated, I Probe= indicates the actual probe current (+/- 15 %).



IMPORTANT

After cathode replacement or after re-alignment of the electron optical column, OptiProbe has to be calibrated. Refer to section 5.3.

| SEM Control | | ۲ |
|---------------|------------------|--------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
| EHT = 10.00 | kV | |
| Extractor V = | 5.51 kV | |
| Extractor I = | 169.30 µA | |
| Fill = 2.380 | Δ. | |
| Beam State = | Beam On | ~ |
| 🗸 Leave Gu | n On at Shutdown | |
| EHT Off @ | Log Off | |
| Fill Target = | 2.380 A | |
| < | | |
| Extractor V T | arget = 5.65 kV | |
| | 10.00111 | |
| EHI larget: | = 10.00 kV | |
| | | 2 |
| OptiProbe | Busy | |
| I Probe = 3 | .1 nA | |
| | | > |

4.3.5. Aligning the aperture

The alignment of the aperture in the beam path has a decisive effect on resolution and sharpness of the image.

The aperture alignment should therefore be adjusted or checked anytime the aperture is changed and after major modifications of the EHT setting.

Whenever the image is shifting while you are focusing, the aperture should be re-aligned.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the **Apertures** tab.

Alternatively:

Select Beam/Aperture from the menu.

3 Tick the Focus Wobble checkbox.

The Focus Wobble is a function that sweeps the focus of the objective lens backwards and forwards through the focus on the specimen surface. If the aperture is slightly misaligned, a lateral shift can be observed.

- 4 Set wobble intensity by using the **Wobble Amplitude** slider.
- 5 If required, select a higher wobble frequency by ticking the **Wobble Fast** checkbox.
- 6 Adjust the aperture in X and Y direction by means of the slider in the **Aperture Align** navigation box.

Alternatively, you can move the red marker by holding the left mouse button and dragging.

Adjust until the image pulsates, i.e. there is only a continuous change from a sharp to a blurry image without shifting.

- 7 Untick the Focus Wobble checkbox.
- 8 Refocus the image.

| SEM Control | | | | (* |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------|-----|
| Detectors Gun Aperti | Gcannin ures | g Stage | Gun Vacu Vac | uum |
| Aperture Size (1) 30.00 μm - | Standar | d | | |
| V Focus Wobble | e | W | /obble Fa | ist |
| Wobble Amplitud | de = 41. | 1% | | > |
| 🔲 Beam Blanke | ł | | Emission | |
| Mag / Focus | Apertu | re Align | | |
| Aperture Align | | | | |
| Gun Align | | -+- | | |
| Stigmation | | | | ~ |
| Beam Shift | < | ,IIII) | > | 0 |
| | 📃 High | Current | 1 | |

4.3.6. Correcting astigmatism

Astigmatism is an aberration of lenses, that can be corrected by means of the so-called stigmator.

4.3.6.1. Setting the stigmator

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the Apertures tab.
- 3 Click Stigmation.

Adjust the stigmation by using the X and Y sliders or the arrow buttons in the **Stigmation** box.

| Detectors | Scanni | ng | Gu | un Vacuum |
|------------------------------|------------------|--------|------|-----------|
| Gun A | pertures | Sta | ige | Vacuum |
| Aperture Size (1) 30.00 µ | : ım - Standa | ard | | ~ |
| Focus Wo | obble | | Wo | bble Fast |
| Wobble Amp | olitude = 4 | 1.1 % | | 2 |
| 🔲 Beam Bla | nked | | E | mission |
| Mag / Focu | us Stign | nation | T | |
| Aperture Ali | gn | | | ~ |
| Gun Align | | | - | _ |
| Stigmation | | | | |
| Beam Shif | ۱ | | | >0 |
| | 📃 Hig | h Cur | rent | |



1 In the toolbar, click the **Stigmation/Alignment** icon.

The mouse assignment is indicated in the status bar.

2 To adjust stigmation hold the left mouse button and drag.

4.3.6.2. Using the Auto Stigmation function

1 In the toolbar, middle-click the **Auto Focus+Stig** icon.

A fine auto focus correction is performed followed by an automatic astigmatism algorithm.



Stigmation/Alignment

4.3.7. Showing SEM parameters (SEM status window)

The SEM status window is helpful to show, edit and set frequently used parameters. The SEM status window lists the operation parameters selected by the individual user.

1 Select View/SEM Status from the menu.

Alternatively, type **<CTRL+ I>**.

| SmartSEM Status | |
|---|--|
| Display Select File | |
| Brightness = 50.0 % EHT = 0.00 kV EHT Off EHT On | |

- 2 Select the parameters to be displayed:
 - a Go to the Select tab.
 - b Click the parameter you wish to be displayed.

The parameter is shown in the **Display** tab.

| SmartSEM Status 🛛 🛛 🗙 |
|---|
| Display Select File |
| SmartSEM\ |
| □ 12 SmartSEM □ → All Commands □ → All Parameters |
| ⊕ ♦ Calibration ⊕ ♦ Column ⊕ ♦ Configuration |
| B Sun → O Acc Volt Interlock 0K → O Beam Blanked |
| |
| |

- 3 To change the setting of the displayed parameter:
 - a Go to the **Display** tab.
 - b Double-click the parameter name.

- 4 To load a saved combination of parameters:
 - a Go to the **File** tab.
 - b Click Load.
 - c Select the file.
- 5 To save a selected combination of parameters:
 - a Go to the File tab.
 - b Click Save As.
 - c Enter a file name and confirm.
- 6 To delete the complete list of parameters:
 - a Go to the File tab.
 - b Click Clear Display.

| martSEM Status | × |
|---------------------|---|
| Display Select File | - |
| | |
| | |
| Load | |
| | |
| Save As | |
| Clear Displau | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

4.3.8. Recording SEM parameters

The Gun Monitor utility offers the possibility of recording and displaying important parameters of the SEM/FESEM at defined intervals during operation of the SmartSEM[®] user interface.

1 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM Service/Gun Monitor from the Windows desktop.

The Gun Monitor window opens.

| G File | iun Monitor Monitor View He | lp | | | |] 🛃 |
|-----------|--------------------------------|-------|---------------------|----|-----|-----|
| D | 6 9 9 6 | ? • I | 1 1 1 | -1 | | |
| | | | | | | 1 |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| andu | | 1 | 1 | 1 | NUM | 1 |

2 To start the record, select Monitor/Start.

Alternatively, click the green dot.

Eight different channels are available, six of them are predefined to record extractor voltage, extractor current, filament current heating, gun vacuum, liner tube voltage, and acceleration voltage.

- 3 To modify channel assignments:
 - a Select Monitor/Options. The Display Options window opens.
 - b To remove the checkmark, click it.

| _ | Min. Value | Max. Value | | ОК |
|-----------------|------------|------------|--------|------|
| Extractor V | 0 | 9000 | ۷ | Cano |
| Extractor I | 0 | 300 | uA | Defa |
| 🔽 Filament I | 0 | 4000 | mA | |
| 🔽 Gun Vacuum* | 1e-010 | 0.0001 | mBar | |
| 🗖 Liner V | 0 | 9000 | ۷ | |
| 🗆 ЕНТ V | 0 | 30000 | ۷ | |
| System Vacuum 💌 | 1e-006 | 0.0001 | (mBar) | |
| | 0 | 0 | | |

- 4 To change the colour:
 - a Click the colour square.
 - b Select another colour and confirm.
- 5 To enter the minimum and maximum values to be displayed in the diagram:
 - a Click into the Min Value or Max Value field.
 - b Enter a minimum value or maximum value.
- 6 Confirm by clicking on OK.
 By clicking on Defaults you can cancel all settings and reset them to the basic settings.

- 7 To set the recording interval:
 - a Select Monitor/Interval. The monitor interval window opens.
 - b Enter an interval in seconds.

| | OK |
|------------------|--------|
| | Cancel |
| Meniter Internal | |
| Monitor Interval | - |

- 8 To freeze the record, select Monitor/Freeze.
- 9 To stop the record, select Monitor/Stop.
- 10 To save the record, select File/Save As.
- 11 To print the record, select File/Print.

| 🞽 Gi | un Mon | itor | | |
|--------|---------|------|------|--------|
| File I | Monitor | View | Help | |
| | 2 | | 3 | • 11 • |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
4.4. Imaging

4.4.1. Setting detection parameters

4.4.1.1. Selecting a detector

Detectors provide the signals to be displayed on the monitor. A drop-down list shows the detector types adapted to your SEM/FESEM. Depending on the detector type selected, different information is shown in the image.

1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.

- 2 Go to the **Detectors** tab.
- 3 Select the desired detector Signal A.

Signal A is always the active signal displayed on the monitor.



Alternatively:

Select **Detection/Detectors** from the menu.

A list of the adapted detectors is shown. The active detector is ticked.



4.4.1.2. Setting the collector voltage of the SE2 detector

In front of the SE2 detector an electrical field is generated that allows you to influence the detection. This collector voltage can be varied at a range between -250 V and +400 V.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel/Detectors.
- 2 To set the collector voltage use the **Collector Bias** slider.

For standard applications the Collector Bias should be set to +300 V.

At higher magnification it is recommended varying the Collector Bias so that the best possible signal is obtained in the image.

To generate a so-called pseudo-backscattered image set a negative Collector Bias. This will produce an extreme topography but nearly no surface qualities and material contrasts.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| Detectors | | |
| Signal A = SE2 | 2 🔽 Collecto | or Bias = 300 |
| Signal B = InL | ens 🔽 | |
| Mixing | Signal : | = 1.000 |
| - Signal Adjust- | | nput LUT Mode |
| Auto BC = Off | | Transparent |
| Brightness = 4 | 46.7 % (| Gamma |
| | |) Inverse |
| Contrast = 29 | .6% | User |

4.4.1.3. Adjusting brightness and contrast

Changing the signal to more brightness shifts all grey levels in the image to lighter levels and vice versa.

Changing the signal to more contrast expands the range of grey levels in the image and vice versa.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the **Detectors** tab.
- 3 To adjust brightness, use the **Brightness** slider.

To adjust contrast, use the **Contrast** slider.

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| Detectors | | |
| Signal A = SE2 | Collecto | r Bias = 300 |
| Signal B = InLe | ns 🔽 Signal = | : 1.000 |
| Mixing | < | > |
| - Signal Adjust- | [n | put LUT Mode |
| Auto BC = Off | × (| Transport |
| | | y Hanspalerii. |
| Brightness = 4 | 6.7 % | Gamma |
| | |) Inverse |
| Contrast = 29.6 | 5% | User |
| | | |
| Gamma = 1.0 | 000 | |
| < | | > |
| | | |

Alternatively:

1 In the toolbar, click the Brightness + Contrast icon.

The mouse assignment is indicated in the status bar.

2 To adjust brightness hold the left mouse button and drag.To adjust contrast hold the middle mouse button and drag.



4.4.1.4. Using AutoBC

The Auto BC function allows you to automatically adjust brightness or contrast or both brightness and contrast.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel.
- 2 Go to the **Detectors** tab.
- 3 Select one of the settings from the drop-down menu:
 - Off: Switches the function off
 - B: Automatic adjustment of brightness
 - C: Automatic adjustment of contrast

BC: Automatic adjustment of brightness *and* contrast

| Gun | Apertures | St | age | Vacuum |
|------------|--------------|-------|---------|------------|
| Detector | is Scar | nning | Gu | in Vacuum |
| Detector | s | | | |
| Signal A | = InLens 💽 | Coll | ector B | ias = 300 |
| Signal B | = InLens 💊 | | | |
| Mixing | I | Sigr | nal = 1 | .000 |
| - Signal A | djust | | Inpu | t LUT Mode |
| Auto BC | = C | ~ | ۲ 📀 | ransparent |
| В | | | 00 | iamma |
| C BC | | | 0 | nverse |
| Auto C T | arget = 48.5 | * | 01 | Jser |
| Gamma | a = 1.000 | | | > |

4.4.1.5. Mixing two detector signals (licence: SIGMIX)

This function allows mixing the signals of the detectors selected in Signal A= and Signal B=. Information registered by one single detector (e.g. topographic contrast) can thus be overlapped with another detector signal to increase the information of the image. Requires the licence SIGMIX.

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel/Detectors.
- 2 Tick the **Mixing** checkbox.
- Use the Signal slider to adjust the percentage of mixing between 0 and 1 (i.e. 0 to 100%).
 For example, adjusting Signal = 0.6000 means that the image is composed of 60 % signal A and 40 % signal B.

To quit the mixing function, untick the **Mixing** checkbox.

| Gun | Ap | ertures | Sta | age | Vacuum |
|------------|---------|---------|-------|--------|------------|
| Detecto | ors | Scann | ing | Gu | un Vacuum |
| Detecto | ors | | _ | | |
| Signal A | = SE2 | ~ | Colle | ctor B | ias = 300 |
| Signal B | = InLe | ens 🗸 | S | | |
| o ignor o | | | Sign | al = 1 | .000 |
| 🗹 Mixin | g | | < | | |
| - Signal A | Adjust | | | Inpu | t LUT Mode |
| Auto BC | = Off | ~ | | ا 📀 | ransparent |
| Brightne | ess = 4 | 9.1 % | | 00 | àamma |
| < | | > | | 0 | nverse |
| Contrast | t = 38. | 7% | - | 0 | loor |
| < | | > | | 0 | 1361 |
| | | | | - | |
| Gamm | na = 1. | 000 | | | |
| < | | | | | > |



To quickly activate/deactivate the mixing function, select **Detection/Mixing** from the menu. When active, the function is ticked.

4.4.1.6. Displaying two detector signals on the same monitor (Windowing)

The windowing function allows displaying two different detector signals on the monitor without requiring an optional licence.

- 1 Open the **Panel Configuration Bar**.
- 2 Double-click **Windowing**. The **Windowing** dialog opens.
- 3 Tick the **Windowing** checkbox.

| Windowing | X |
|----------------|---|
| ✓Windowing | |
| Zone = 1 | |
| Signal A = SE2 | ~ |
| Invert A = Off | |

A reduced raster is shown. There are two zones (Zone 0 = outside, Zone 1 = inside the reduced raster). Image modifications apply to the zone marked with the anchor symbol.





- 4 To displace the anchor symbol, hold the left mouse button and drag.
- 5 To invert the signal of the respective zone, select *Invert* A = On.

To quit the Windowing mode, untick the Windowing checkbox and close the Windowing dialog.

4.4.1.7. Displaying two image areas (licence: SPLIT)

This function subdivides the image area into two zones. Different detectors can be assigned to each zone. Each zone can be frozen independently from each other. Requires the licence SPLIT.

1 In the toolbar, click the **Split Screen** icon.

Alternatively: Select **Scanning/Split** from the menu.



The image area is split into two zones. The anchor symbol marks the zone for detector selection, setting of brightness and contrast, freezing or deleting.



2 To displace the anchor symbol hold the left mouse button and drag.

To apply image modifications to both zones simultaneously, double-click the anchor symbol.

The colour of the anchor symbol changes.



To quit the split function, click the **Split Screen** icon. Alternatively, select **Scanning/Normal** from the menu.

4.4.1.8. Displaying detector signals on two different monitors (licence: DUAL-CHANNEL)

This function allows displaying the live image on the second monitor and to select different signal sources monitors. Panels can be moved to the second monitor. Requires the licence DUAL-CHANNEL.

1 Select Image/Dual Channel from the menu.

The anchor symbol marks the zone for detector selection, setting of brightness and contrast and freezing or deleting.

To displace the anchor symbol, hold the left mouse button on the anchor while dragging it to the other monitor.



4.4.1.9. Producing composite images from two detectors (licence: COLOUR MODE)

Colour mode offers the possibility to convert and combine signals from two different detectors and display a live false colour image without losing important information. Requires the licence COLOUR MODE.

- Open the Panel Configuration Bar. 1
- 2 Double-click Colour Mode. The Colour Mode window opens.
- 3 Select Colour Mode = 2 LUT from the Colour Mode drop-down menu.

This enables the checkboxes in column 1 and 2.

4 Adjust contrast and brightness of the two detector signals A and B by using the respective sliders.





SE image



Compositional image (colour mode)



SE image

BSE image



Compositional image (colour mode)

4.4.1.10. Displaying images with different magnifications (licence: DUALMAG)

This function allows you to zoom an image without freezing the image at basis magnification. Dual Mag is recommended in order to accentuate a detail in an image and to simultaneously realise a view of the specimen at low magnification. Requires the licence DUALMAG.

1 In the toolbar, click the **Dual Magnification** icon.



Alternatively:

Select **Scanning/Dual Mag** from the menu. Alternatively:

Tick the Dual Mag checkbox under SEM Con-

trolss Panel/Scanning.

The image area is divided into two zones.

The left zone is displayed at the current magnification. At the same time a frame pops up which defines the range to be displayed in the right zone.



- 2 To modify size and position of the frame, click it with the left mouse button:
 - To change the size of the frame, place the mouse cursor on a mark.
 Alternatively, double-click the **Zoom factor** field in the **SEM Controlss/Scanning** tab and enter the zoom factor.

The zoom factor determines the magnification ratio between the left and the right zone.

b To displace the frame, place the mouse cursor between two marks.

The anchor symbol marks the zone for detector selection, setting of brightness and contrast and freezing or deleting.

- 3 To displace the anchor symbol hold the left mouse button and drag.
- 4 To apply image modifications to both zones simultaneously, double-click the anchor symbol.

The colour of the anchor symbol changes.



4.4.1.11. Using a second CCD camera

If a second CCD camera is attached, it is usually installed as 'Auxiliary 1'.

- 1 Select Detection/TV Inputs from the menu.
- 2 Select Aux 1.



Alternatively:

- 1 Select the **Detectors** tab of the **SEM Controlss** panel.
- 2 Select *Aux 1* from the **Signal A =** drop-down list.



| Icon | It might be helpful to assign the pre-defined |
|------------|--|
| assignment | TOGGLE TV macro to the ChamberScope icon. |
| | This will make the second CCD camera available |
| | by middle-clicking on the ChamberScope icon. |
| | Refer to section 4.9.6. |



4.4.2. Setting the working distance

The working distance (WD) is the distance between the focused specimen surface and the end of the objective lens. The WD determines the possible resolution, the signal-to-noise ratio, the depth of focus and the lowest possible magnification (low power magnification).

- 1 In the toolbar, click the Magnification/Focus.
- 2 Hold the middle mouse button and drag the mouse in order to focus.



The current WD is indicated in the status bar.

| LB: Mag = | 38.17 K X MB: WD = | 4 mm | Fine |
|-----------|----------------------|------|------|
|-----------|----------------------|------|------|

4.4.3. Setting scan parameters

4.4.3.1. Selecting a scan speed

A focused beam of electrons is scanned across the specimen. The speed of the scan can be modified which has an influence on the speed of image generation on the one hand and the extend of image noise on the other hand.

- Select Scanning/Speeds from the menu.
 A drop-down list shows all available scan speeds.
- 2 Select a scan speed and confirm with **OK**.

The higher the scan speed number, the slower the scan of the specimen by the electron beam and the less the noise of the image.

Selection of fifteen scan speeds requires the licence SCANEXP. Without this licence only three scan speeds are available.

| Scan Speed = 3 | |
|---|--------------|
| Scan Speed 1 Scan Speed 2 Scan Speed 3 Scan Speed 4 Scan Speed 5 Scan Speed 6 Scan Speed 7 Scan Speed 7 Scan Speed 9 Scan Speed 10 Scan Speed 10 Scan Speed 11 Scan Speed 12 Scan Speed 13 Scan Speed 14 Scan Speed 15 Scan + Scan + | OK Cancel |

Alternatively:

- 1 Select Tools/Goto Control Panel/Scanning.
- 2 To display the drop-down list, click the **Scan Speed =** field.

| You can use the Scan+ and Scan- buttons to |
|---|
| increase, respectively decrease the scan speed. |

| Gun | Ap | ertures | Sta | ge | Vacuum | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|---------|--------|--------|-------------|--|
| Detecto | rs | Scann | ing | ն | in Vacuum | |
| Operating Store reso | Operating Mode = Normal | | | | | |
| Line So | can | Sca | n Spe | ed = 3 | ~ | |
| Spot 📃 | | Cycl | e Time | e = 37 | 7.00 ms | |
| 📃 Dual M | ag | Zoo | m fact | or = 2 | 2.000 | |
| - Noise R | educti | on | | | | |
| Freeze on = Command | | | | | | |
| Noise Reduction = Frame Avg | | | | | | |
| N = 1 Scan + Freeze Scan- | | | | |) Scan - | |

4.4.3.2. Scanning a small frame (reduced raster)

The reduced raster function allows you to scan only a small frame. This is recommended for alignment procedures such as focusing, aligning the stigmator or using the focus wobble. Moreover, this function is helpful when using an EDX system: Only the information of this selected range is shown in the EDX spectrum.

The possibility to adjust size and position of the reduced raster requires the licence REDUCED.

1 In the toolbar, click the **Reduced Raster**.



Alternatively: Select **Scanning/Reduced** from the menu.

A frame is displayed in the image area, which defines the specimen area to be scanned by the electron beam. The image outside the frame is frozen.



With licence REDUCED:

- 1 To modify size and position of the frame, click it:
 - a To change the size of the frame, place the mouse cursor on a mark (cursor is double arrow), hold the left mouse button and drag.
 - b To displace the frame, place the mouse cursor between two marks (cursor is rectangular symbol), hold the left mouse button and drag.

4.4.3.3. Scanning a spot (licence: SPOT)

In spot mode the electron beam is positioned on a particular spot on the specimen surface. This mode is recommended for the use with an EDX/WDX system or for the measurement of the specimen current.

Requires the licence SPOT.

1 Select **Scanning/Spot** from the menu. The submenu **Spot** is ticked.

Alternatively, select **Tools/Goto Control Panel/Scanning** and tick the **Spot** checkbox.



| EM Cont | rol | | | _ | _ | * |
|-----------|---------|------------|-----------------------|--------|-------|-----|
| Gun | Ap | ertures | Stag | ge | Vac | uum |
| Detecto | ors | Scann | ing | Gu | n Vac | uum |
| Operating | g Mod | e = Norm | əl | | | ~ |
| Store res | olutior | n = 1024 ° | 768 | | | ~ |
| Line Scan | | Sca | n Spee | ed = 3 | | Y |
| 🔽 Spot | | Cycl | Cycle Time = 24.00 ms | | | |
| 🗌 Dual N | Mag | Zoo | Zoom factor = 2.000 | | | |

A cross is displayed on the monitor. The image is frozen.

| SmartStill (SYS11M) | - 2 X |
|---|--|
| File Edit Wew Beam Detection Image Sciencing Stage Viscoum Tools Help | |
| Mag+ 1/27 KX (Focus+ 55 mm | |
| 1.1 2.3 1.1 「 1.1 回 階 階 🚧 🔶 🔶 🖄 👰 | Note of Sector S |
| | SEM Control (E) |
| | Gun Apenuen Stape Detector Scoreiro Vanae |
| | Operating Mode = Normal |
| | Share resolution = 1024 * 768 |
| | CLine Scan Scan Speed - 8 |
| | Spot Cycle Time = 24.00 m |
| | Dual Mag Zoom factor = 2.000 |
| | New Feducion |
| | Freeze on - End Frame |
| | c Noice Reduction = Piet/Ang |
| state statement succession succession | |
| | Son + Lines |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

- 2 To displace the cross:
 - a Hold the left mouse button to drag the cross on the screen.

Alternatively:

- a Open the SEM Status window: Select View/SEM Status from the menu.
- b Display Spot at X and Spot at Y.
- c Double-click Spot at X and Spot at Y in order to enter fixed values.

To quit spot mode, deactivate the submenu **Spot** or untick the **Spot** checkbox.

4.4.3.4. Scanning a line

This function is used to scan along a defined line while the image is frozen. It is recommended for measuring and adjusting signals, e.g. for optimising brightness and contrast.

CAUTION

Danger of damaging the specimen if the electron beam scans along the same line position a longer period of time. This can result in a scan mark on the specimen. When using the Line Scan function for image optimisation place the Line Scan on a specimen area adjacent to the actual area of interest.

1 Select **Scanning/Line Scan** from the menu. The submenu **Line Scan** is ticked.

Alternatively, select **Tools/Goto Control Panel/Scanning** and tick the **Line Scan** checkbox.



| | | X |
|--------------------|-------------------------|------------|
| SEM Control | | ۲ |
| Gun Ane | rtures Sta | Vacuum |
| Detectors | Scanning | Gun Vacuum |
| Operating Mode | = Normal | ~ |
| Store resolution : | = 1024 * 768 | ~ |
| 🔽 Line Scan | Scan Spee | :d = 3 💌 |
| Spot Spot | Cycle Time | =0 μs |
| 🔲 Dual Mag | Zoom facto | or = 2.000 |
| Noise Reductio | n | |
| Freeze on = Co | mmand | ~ |
| Noise Reductio | n = Frame Avg Freeze | Scan - |

A horizontal line is displayed together with a diagram which shows the course of the signal along this line.

The displayed graph represents the grey value distribution along the line. The grey values are represented from 0 to 255 on the ordinate. The illumination of the image can thus be adjusted at the representative spot.

- 2 To move it to the desired specimen area, click the horizontal line.
- 3 To change colour and background of the diagram:
 - a Position the mouse cursor in the diagram.
 - b Click the right mouse button.

A pop-up menu opens, where you can select the colour of the graph and a grey background.



4.4.3.5. Rotating the image (licence: SCANROT)

This function allows you to rotate the image electronically by rotating the scan direction. Requires the licence SCANROT.

1 Select Scanning/Rotate/Tilt.

The Rotate/Tilt panel is shown.

- 2 Tick the Scan Rot checkbox.
- 3 Set the desired tilt angle with the Scan Rotation slider or by double-clicking on the Scan Rotation field.

The image is rotated.

| Rotate / Tilt | × |
|------------------------|---|
| Dyn.Focus | |
| FCF Setting = 0.0 % | |
| | 2 |
| Scan Rot | |
| Scan Rotation = 90.0 * | |
| | > |
| 🔲 Tilt Corrn. | |
| Tilt Angle = 0.0 * | |
| | > |
| | |



4.4.3.6. Displaying the scan marker

The scan marker is a small bar on the left side of the image area, which indicates the scanned line on the monitor. This might be helpful when using slow scan speeds because the scan marker helps to see which line is currently being scanned by the electron beam. The scan marker is not recorded on the image.

1 Select Tools/User Preferences.

| | Name | Value | ОК |
|--|----------------------------|--------------|----------|
| User | Auto Signal | Off | Cancel |
| Language | Crosshairs | Off | × |
| Access Level | Scan Rate (Emission) | Off | ~ |
| Pressure Units | Reduce Raster Focus Wobble | On | ~ |
| - User Alian | Scan Rate (Eocus Wobble) | Scan Speed 1 | ~ |
| Reset LUT | Beam Blanking | On | ~ |
| - User Directory Setup | Ream Shift Mag | Off | ~ |
| - Image Directory Setup - Magnification Display | Beam Shift (Defined Mag.) | 100 | |
| - Plain Images | Beam Shitt (Delined Mag.) | 100 | |
| Stage | Aperture Align | ОП | |
| Backlash | Scan Marker Enable | No | <u>×</u> |
| Fast Scanning | Scan Marker Height | 1 | |
| - Stage Graphics - Stage V In Tilted Plane | Scan Marker Width | 32 | |
| - Noise Reduction | Scan Marker Colour | | |
| M Axis Warning | | | |

- 2 In the tree structure, select **SEM Conditions**.
- 3 Select Scan Marker Enable Yes.
- 4 Select Height, Width and Colour of the scan marker.

| Name | Value | |
|--------------------|-------|---|
| Scan Marker Enable | Yes | M |
| Scan Marker Height | 1 | |
| Scan Marker Width | 32 | |
| Scan Marker Colour | | |

5 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



IMPORTANT

The scan marker will only be displayed when you use slow scan speeds (5 - 15). At quicker scan speeds (4 and faster) it will be deactivated automatically.

4.4.4. Setting the magnification

4.4.4.1. Selecting the magnification

- 1 In the toolbar, click Magnification/Focus.
- 2 Hold the left mouse button and drag the mouse to adjust the desired magnification.

The current magnification is indicated in the status bar.



4.4.4.2. Using pre-defined magnifications (Magnification Table)

Up to ten fixed magnifications can be entered in the Magnification Table for quick access during the imaging procedure. The magnifications have to be pre-defined in the **User Preference** panel (refer to section 4.9.4.4.).

To call the pre-set magnifications:

1 Press <F4>.

Anytime F4 is pressed, the next magnification value will be set.

- 2 To return to the previous magnification value, press <Ctrl + F4>.
- 3 To finish the use of the Magnification Table, press <Shift + F4>.

The magnification of the SEM/FESEM will be reset to the level that was active before the Magnification Table was used for the first time.

4.4.5. Imaging tilted specimen

4.4.5.1. Using Dynamic Focus (licence: DYNFOCUS)

The dynamic focus allows the dynamic adaptation of the focus to tilted specimen surfaces. Requires the licence DYNFOCUS.

- 1 Show the reduced raster:
 - a Reduce the size of the raster.
 - b Place it in the centre of the image area.



c Adjust the best possible focus in the reduced raster. Crosshairs may be helpful. 2 Displace the reduced raster to the very upper or the lower image margin.



- 3 Set a slow scan speed (9 or higher).
- 4 Select **Scanning/Dynamic Focus** from the menu.
- 5 Tick the **Dyn. Focus** checkbox. The dynamic focus is enabled now.
- 6 Use the **FCF Setting** slider in order to adjust optimum sharpness in the reduced raster.

Do not modify the normal focus (middle mouse button).

- 7 Select **Scanning/Normal** to acquire the complete image while using a slow scan speed.
- 8 Store the image.
- 9 Untick the **Dyn. Focus** checkbox to quit the dynamic focus mode.

| Rotate / Tilt | X |
|-----------------------|---|
| Dyn.Focus | |
| FCF Setting = -26.3 % | > |
| Scan Rot | |
| Scan Rotation = 0.0 * | > |
| 🗖 Tilt Corrn. | |
| Tilt Angle = 0.0 * | > |



IMPORTANT

The best application of the dynamic focus is only possible with tilted plane specimens. If the specimen presents strong differences in height (topography) or different inclinations of slope, the depth of focus must be optimised as well.

4.4.5.2. Using Tilt Correction (licence: TILTCOMP)

This functions allows the correction of the perspective foreshortening caused by the scan of a tilted specimen.

If a specimen presents a high tilt angle, the electron beam scans a larger part of the specimen in tilt direction so that the image is distorted.

Requires the licence TILTCOMP.

- Ensure the specimen surface is tilted in Y direction respective to the monitor.
- 2 Select Scanning/Rotate/Tilt from the menu.
- 3 Tick the **Tilt Corrn.** checkbox.
- Adjust the **Tilt Angle** slider.Alternatively, double-click in the **Tilt Angle** field and enter the angle.

| Rotate / Tilt | X |
|-----------------------|---|
| Dyn.Focus | |
| FCF Setting = -26.3 % | |
| | > |
| Scan Rot | |
| Scan Rotation = 0.0 * | |
| <u><</u> | > |
| Tilt Corrn. | |
| Tilt Angle = -11.8 * | |
| | > |
| | |





IMPORTANT

When you use an extremely tilted specimen, you should adjust the dynamic focus as well.



IMPORTANT

With Cross Beam series instruments: If you wish to measure the height, note that you have to enter '90° - tilt angle value' in the 'Tilt Angle=' field.

4.4.6. Improving the signal-to-noise ratio (noise reduction)

The signal entering the image processor is made up of two components: image and noise. Image is the signal of interest and correlates with the object being scanned, noise is random in nature. Therefore, by averaging multiple scans of the same area, the signal will be reinforced, while the noise will be reduced. This is the basis on which the noise reduction works.

The signal-to-noise ratio is an important factor for image quality. It does not only depend on the parameters EHT, aperture size and working distance, but also on the dwell time of the electron beam per image spot.

To reduce the noise level of an image, you can

- increase the dwell time of the electron beam per pixel or
- scan the respective specimen spot several times and integrate the generated signal.

| Method | Explanation | Typical application |
|--|--|---|
| Frame Average (Continuous Aver- aging) | Averaging of two or more consecutive frames: Frames are scanned continuously and the image is formed as the average of a number of succes- sive frames. The live signal is proportionally mixed with the stored signal so that the image reflects the aver- age of the recent frames. The proportion of live to stored can be adjusted with the parameter N which represents the number of frames to be averaged. | Frame averaging is used to reduce random noise. It can be selected with any scan speed but is generally most useful at the faster speeds where a larger amount of noise reduction can be obtained without introducing a long cycle time. |
| Frame Integrate | Addition of two or more consecutive frames. The image automatically freezes at the end of the integration cycle. The scan speed defines the time to complete a frame and the noise reduction parameter N defines the number of frames to integrate. | Frame integration is used to enhance contrast and reduce noise. It is useful when applied to beam sensitive materials, since the image can be obtained while the beam remains scanning quickly and not allowed to dwell too long on any point of the specimen. In this mode the image is formed as the average of a number of successive frames. Not suitable when sample drift occurs. |
| Line Integrate | Each line to be scanned a number of times before the scan moves on. The average line sig- nal is stored and displayed. The noise reduction parameter N defines the number of times a line is to be averaged before moving to the next line. | |
| Line Average | The image is built up by averaging a number of lines. Each line is scanned a number of times before the scan moves on. The average line sig- nal is stored and displayed. The noise reduction parameter N defines the number of times a line is to be averaged before moving to the next line. | Use Line average when the result of the noise reduction needs to be seen without waiting for the cycle to complete. Suitable for most applications. The image will automatically freeze at the end of the frame. |

| Method | Explanation | Typical application |
|--|--|---|
| Pixel Average | A single frame is scanned. | Suitable for specimens with good electric and thermal conductivity. |
| | The frame time is controlled by the scan speed | |
| | parameter as follows (100 x 2 ⁿ⁻¹): | |
| | Speed 1: 100 ns per pixel Speed 2 : 200 ns per pixel | |
| | Speed 3 : 400 ns per pixel | |
| | Speed 4 : 800 ns per pixel | |
| | Speed 5 : 1.6 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 7 : 6.4 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 8 : 12.8 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 9 : 25.6 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 11 : 102.4 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 12 : 204.8 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 13 : 409.6 µs per pixel Speed 14 : 819 2 µs per pixel | |
| | Speed 15 : 1.6384 ms per pixel | |
| Continuous Average (Pixel Averaging) | Displays an image within which each pixel is measured repeatedly and the average signal displayed. | Most useful for stable, conductive specimens where the beam has little or no damaging effect on the specimen. |
| | Frames are scanned continuously and the image formed as the average of a number of successive frames | |
| | The pixel time is determined by the dwell time | |
| | parameter, that can be selected. | |
| | The number of frames is determined by the scan | |
| | speed (2"). | |
| | Speed 2: Average of 4 frames | |
| | Speed 3: Average of 8 frames | |
| | Speed 4: Average of 16 frames | |
| | Speed 6: Average of 64 frames | |
| | Speed 7: Average of 128 frames | |
| | Speed 8: Average of 256 frames | |

4.4.6.1. Selecting a noise reduction method

- 1 Select **Tools/Go To Control Panel** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Scanning** tab.
- 3 Select a Freeze on mode:

Command: Causes an immediate freeze of the current zone (the whole image in normal mode) if you click **Freeze**.

End Frame: Causes the zone to freeze at the end of the current frame.

4 Select a Noise Reduction mode.

When selecting Frame Avg:

- a Select **N=**, set a value between *1* and *256*.
- b Select a **Dwell time** from the drop-down list.

| Gun | Ap | pertures | Sta | ge | Vacuum | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------|--------|-------------|--|--|
| Detector | rs | Scanni | ng | Gu | ın Vacuum | | |
| Operating Mode = Normal | | | | | | | |
| Store resolution = 1024 * 768 | | | | | | | |
| Line So | Line Scan Scan Speed = 3 | | | | | | |
| Spot 📃 | | Cycl | e Time | e = 37 | 7.00 ms | | |
| Dual Mag | | | | | | | |
| -Noise Re | Noise Reduction | | | | | | |
| Freeze on = Command | | | | | | | |
| Noise Re | educ | tion = Fran Freez | ne Avg | • | > Scan - | | |
| | | | | | | | |

4.4.7. Improving image illumination by using Look Up Tables (LUT)

4.4.7.1. Editing a live image (Input LUT)

Using Look Up Tables (LUT) is recommended when the illumination of an image while using a linear characteristic line is very difficult or impossible. In these cases you may try to obtain better illumination of the image by adding or displacing discrete points of the characteristic line or by adding a step function. The Input LUT is used to perform a translation on the input signal as defined by the pattern loaded into the LUT. Modifications of the Input LUT effect the live image.

1 Select Edit/Input LUT from the menu.

The EM LUT Editor window opens.



The following functions are available:

Select Mode

Displaces and deletes points of the transfer characteristic.

Displace: Place the mouse cursor on the point and displace it by holding the left mouse button.

Delete: Place the mouse cursor immediately near the point and press the middle mouse button.

| 11 | | |
|----|--------------|--|
| | • / 1 | |
| | | |
| | 1 | |
| | - NC | |
| | 10 | |

Add/Remove Points

Adds and deletes points in the transfer characteristics.

Add: Place the mouse cursor in the graphic field and press the left mouse button.

Delete: Place the mouse cursor immediately near the point and press the middle mouse button.



Undo Last Edit Undoes the last change of the Input LUT.



Open LUT Loads specific Input LUT settings and apply these settings to the current image.



Save LUT As.. Saves specific settings of the Input LUT.



Reset LUT Returns the Input LUT to the basic condition (linear characteristic)



Invert LUT Inverts the current transfer characteristic.



Step LUT

Adds a step function as a transfer characteristic to convert the transfer characteristic into a regular sequence of grey values.

The height of each step (amplitude), the position of the first step (offset) and the number of steps (period) can be separately set. It is also possible to further modify the curve by adding or displacing different points.





Adjust Step LUT Settings Calls up the LUT Step Settings window to set amplitude, period, and offset of the step function.

| | | • | | Мах - ' |
|--------|------------|------------|----------------|--------------------|
| | | • | | |
| | | | | _ |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | Max |
| | Υ. | • | | с т. |
| | _ | _ | _ | _ |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| rectly | to (| Curre | ent l | _UT |
| | , ectly | ectly to (| ectly to Curre | ectly to Current I |

4.4.7.2. Editing a saved image (Display LUT)

The Display LUT is used to edit a SEM image, e.g. by subsequent colouring, modification of brightness and contrast, inversion or addition of a gamma function. These settings effect the saved image as well as the live image.

- 1 Load a saved image.
- 2 Select Edit/Display LUT from the menu.





Select Mode

Displaces and deletes points of the transfer characteristic.

Displace: Place the mouse cursor on the point and displace it by holding the left mouse button.

Delete: Place the mouse cursor immediately near the point and press the middle mouse button.

2

Add/Remove Points

Adds and deletes points in the transfer characteristics.

Add: Place the mouse cursor in the graphic field and press the left mouse button. Delete: Place the mouse cursor immediately near the point and press the middle mouse button.

Undo Last Edit Undoes the last change of the Input LUT.

Open LUT Loads specific Input LUT settings and applies these settings to the current image.



Save LUT As.. Saves specific settings of the Input LUT.



Returns the Input LUT to the basic condition (linear characteristic)



Invert LUT Inverts the current transfer characteristic.



Step LUT Adds a step function as a transfer characteristic to convert the transfer characteristic into a regular sequence of grey values.

The height of each step (amplitude), the position of the first step (offset) and the number of steps (period) can be separately set. It is also possible to further modify the curve by adding or displacing different points.





Adjust Step LUT Settings Calls up the **LUT Step Settings** window to set amplitude, period, and offset of the step function.





Edits brightness and contrast.



The Gamma option allows to define the transfer characteristic as a curve to enlarge lower and higher grey scales. This function can be used to improve images containing a large quantity of detailed information in few grey scales.



Inserts a grey wedge (continuous distribution of the grey scales from white to black) as current image to adjust particular output media.



Switches from RGB to grey value LUT.



Sets the level of a point in the transfer characteristic after selection of a point.



Switches from grey value LUT to RGB LUT and selects the transfer characteristic for the colour red. Subsequent modifications of this transfer characteristic refer only to the colour red.



Switches from grey value LUT to RGB LUT and selects the transfer characteristic for the colour green. Subsequent modifications of this transfer characteristic refer only to the colour green.



Switches from grey value LUT to RGB LUT and selects the transfer characteristic for the colour blue.

Subsequent modifications of this transfer characteristic refer only to the colour blue.

4.4.8. Processing the image (licence: IMMATH)

The functions in Image Processing offer the possibility of mathematically manipulating the image content pixel-by-pixel by using the grey value (0=black, 255=white). Different filter functions, basic mathematic operations and the detection of grey values can be used. Requires the licence IMMATH.

4.4.8.1. Grey value detection

- 1 Select Image/Image Processing from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Threshold** tab.
- 3 Set the type of threshold:

Select *Black*, *White* or *Grey* from the **Image Detect** drop-down list.

Black: Each pixel in the image storage with a value inferior to the black threshold is coloured red.

White: Each pixel in the image storage with a value inferior to the white threshold is coloured red.

Grey: Each pixel in the image storage with a value superior to the black threshold or inferior to the white threshold is coloured red.

| mage Processi | ng | | | |
|---------------|--|---------|------------------|--|
| Histogram Eg | ualisation | Re | altime Filtering | |
| 2D Filters | Image Maths Threshold | | | |
| Black Threst | hold = 33.5 % (110) hold = 100.0 | % | | |
| Image Detec | t = Black. | ¥ | Reset LUT | |
| Update | Area F | raction | = 17.0 % | |

- 4 Select the threshold for black by using the **Black Threshold** slider.
- 5 Select the threshold for white by using the **White Threshold** slider.
- 6 To calculate the area fraction of certain grey values coloured red in the image by clicking **Update**.



IMPORTANT

If stored images contain annotations or measurements, the grey values of these annotations will be included in calculation and presentation.



4.4.8.2. Creating a stereo image

The creation of stereo images allows you to get images showing a 3D effect. Prerequisite is that you take two images of the same specimen at the same magnification but at a different tilt angle. Depending on magnification and topography of the specimen, the difference of the tilt angle should be 2° to 15° .

- 1 Take the first image:
 - a Display crosshairs.
 - b To ease navigation, move a striking detail to the centre of the image.
 - c Set the desired magnification.
 - d Rotate the image by 90° by means of the scan rotation function.
 - e Freeze the image.
 - f Save the image without data zone or annotations.



- 2 Take the second image under a different tilt angle:
 - a Unfreeze the image.
 - b Disable scan rotation.
 - c Display crosshairs.
 - d Tilt the stage step by step.In most cases the tilt angle between the two images should differ by 2° to 15°.
 - Compensate for the move of the specimen range by moving the stage in Y-direction.
 Always place the striking detail back to the centre of the crosshairs.

By tilting the specimen, the focus has been changed as well.

f When reaching the required tilt angle, reset the focus by driving the stage in Z direction.
- g Rotate the image by 90° by means of the scan rotation function.
- h Freeze the image.
- i Save the image without data zone or annotations.



- 3 Select **Image/Image Processing** from the menu.
- 4 Go to the Image Maths tab.
- 5 Reload the first image:
 - a Under **Source** select *Image Store*, under **Operation** select *Copy To*, under **Destination** select *Buffer 1*.
 - b Click **Execute**.

The image is copied to buffer store 1.

| Histogram Eq | ualisation | Re | altime Filtering |
|--------------|------------|--------|------------------|
| 2D Filters | Image M | aths | Threshold |
| Source | | Sourc | e 2 |
| Image Store | ~ | Imag | e Store |
| Operation | | Destir | ation |
| Сору То | ~ | Buffe | r 1 (Valid) |
| | - | | |

- 6 Reload the second image:
 - a Under Source select Image Store,
 under Operation select Make Stereo Pair,
 under Source 2 select Buffer 1,
 under Destination select Image Store.
 - b Click Execute.

Both images are combined with a colour code and displayed on the monitor.

7 If the images are not exactly congruent, use the sliders Stereo Merge and Stereo Tilt to adjust X- and Y-directions.

| Histogram Eq | ualisation | Re | altime Filtering |
|--------------|---------------|---------|------------------|
| 2D Filters | Image M | laths | Threshold |
| Source | | Sourc | e 2 |
| Image Store | * | Buffe | r1 🗸 |
| Operation | | Destin | ation |
| Make Stered | Pair 😽 | Image | e Store 🛛 👻 |
| Stereo Merg | e = 2.0 % | Stere | o Tilt = 4.0 % |
| Display (| results as se | cond im | age |
| Execute | ٦ | | ndo |



IMPORTANT

Stereo glasses are required to be able to recognise the 3D effect in the colour image.



4.4.8.3. Histogram equalisation

This function allows a non-linear contrast optimization of the image. Ranges with frequent grey values are enlarged while ranges with rare grey values are compressed. Certain image structures can thus be accentuated whereas other structures are reduced so that the total impression of the image is modified.

- 1 Select **Image/Image Processing** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the Histogram Equalisation tab.
- 3 To improve the contrast by calculating the grey scale distribution, click **Histogram Equalise: Store**.

The image is frozen.

 To generate an image transformation by using a Display-LUT click Histogram Equalise:LUT.
 To undo the calculated Display LUT, click Reset LUT.

| Image Processing | × |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 2D Filters Image Maths | Threshold |
| Histogram Equalisation Re. | altime Filtering |
| Histogram Equalise: Stor | e |
| Histogram Equalise: LU | |
| Reset LUT | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

Examples for histogram equalisation:



4.4.8.4. 2D filtering

The 2D Filters function enables selection of a kernel to be applied to the image in the source image store.

- 1 Select **Image/Image Processing** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **2D Filters** tab.
- 3 Under **Source**, select the storage to which the transformation should be applied to.
- 4 Select a **Filter**. Nine pre-defined filters are available:

| Histogram Eq | ualisation | Rea | altime Filtering |
|--------------|------------|--|--|
| 2D Filters | Image | Maths | Threshold |
| Source | | Filter | |
| Image Store | ~ | User Def | ined 🔽 |
| B | uffer 1 (V | Sharpen Sharpen Horizonta Vertical E Edge Del Edge Del Laplaciar | 2 IEdge dge tect tect 2 1 |

| Filter | Process |
|-----------------|--|
| User Defined | Applies user-specific filters, according to definition below |
| Smooth | Smoothes the image |
| Sharpen | Sharpens the image |
| Sharpen 2 | Sharpens the image |
| Horizontal edge | Detects horizontal edges in the image |
| Vertical edge | Detects vertical edges in the image |
| Edge Detect | Performs irregular edge detection by using a combined detection of horizon- tal and vertical edges in the image |
| Edge Detect 2 | Performs irregular edge detection by using a combined detection of horizon- tal and vertical edges in the image |
| Laplacian | Detects edges in the image by realising a Laplace transformation using the four neighbouring pixels. |
| Laplacian 2 | Detects edges in the image by realising a Laplace transformation using the eight neighbouring pixels. |



6 To start the image processing, click **Execute**.

If you want to cancel the last calculation, click **Undo**.

| Histogram Equ | ualisation | Realtime Filtering |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------------------|
| 2D Filters | Image Maths | s Threshold |
| ource | Filter | |
| Image Store | Smo | oth 🔽 |
| B | uffer 1 (Valid) | ~ |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | 11.1 |

Examples for 2D filtering:



Original image

Inverted image



Defining userspecific filters

- 1 Under Filter, select User Defined.
- 2 Click **Execute**.



If no user-specific filters are defined, a warning message pops up.

3 Confirm this message by clicking on **OK**.



The Apply User Defined Filter window opens.

4 Select New.



The Edit User Defines Filter window opens.

5 Create a new filter by means of the **Filter Kernel Matrix**, enter a file name and confirm.

| Filter | Kernel | Matrix | | |
|--------|----------|--------------|----|------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Divi | sion Fai | ctor Canc | el | Help |

4.4.8.5. Realtime filtering

The function **Realtime Filtering** offers the possibility of mathematically manipulating the image during recording. This feature is based on the evaluation of the grey value of a pixel, under consideration of the grey value of the neighbouring pixels.

- 1 Select **Image/Image Processing** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Realtime Filtering** tab.
- 3 Select the Filter type.



| Filter | Process | Remarks |
|---------------|---|---|
| Smooth | Smoothes the image. Set the degree of smoothing by using the Smoothing slider. | Recommended for live images with a high noise ratio. |
| Differentiate | Differentiates the image. Set the degree of smoohting by using the Differentiate slider. | Increases the grey value differences of the individual pixels. Accentuates fine struc- tures and increases the focus of the image. Being prone to interferences, this filter should not be used for very noisy images. |
| User Defined | Applies a user-specific filter, which can be set by means of the Filter Kernel field. | |

4.5. Annotating images

The annotation toolbar provides several tools to add notes or graphical objects to your image.



For example, you can insert lines, arrows or texts. Moreover, it is possible to measure distances or the size of a rectangular area, the diameter of a circle or angle etc.

The image can be saved with the annotation overlaid on the image. Measurements can be performed on either saved or live image.

4.5.1. Adding text

- 1 Select the **Annotation Text** icon. Alternatively, type **<CTRL+T**>.
- 2 Click the image where you wish to place the text.

A dialog opens.



3 Enter the text and confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.5.1.1. Modifying text properties

- 1 Click the annotation text box to mark it.
- 2 Select **Properties** from the drop down list.

You can change e.g. font, font style, background style, and background colour.



4.5.2. Adding geometrical objects

1 Select the desired annotation icon such as Annotation Line, Annotation Rectangle or Annotation Ellipse.



2 Click the image where you wish to place the object.



4.5.2.1. Modifying object properties

- 1 Click the annotation text box to mark it.
- 2 Select **Properties** from the drop-down list.

You can e.g. display a direction arrow at a line, change line settings, background style, and background colour.



4.5.3. Adding EM parameters

1 Click the EM Parameter icon.

The Annotation SEM Parameter panel opens.

- 2 Select the parameters to be inserted.
- If you wish that the value will be displayed without parameter, tick the Omit Parameter Name checkbox.
- 4 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.





4.5.4. Adding a bitmap or metafile

- 1 Click the Insert User Bitmap icon.
- 2 Click the image where you wish to place the object.
- 3 Select the bitmap or metafile.
- 4 Click **Open**.

4.5.5. Zone magnification

Zone magnification allows you to show the magnification of a selected zone which might be helpful when the magnifications of different zones are not the same.

- 1 Click the **Zone Magnification** icon.
- 2 Click the zone of interest.

The magnification of this zone is displayed.





4.5.6. Adding micron markers

A micron marker is a horizontal bar which indicates the size of an object in the image. Above the bar its length is displayed.

4.5.6.1. Micron marker

The micron marker is self-sizing as the bar has minimum and maximum lengths. If the magnification is changed such that these limits would be exceeded the length represented by the bar is changed to a whole number which would permit the bar to be within limits.

- 1 Click the **Micron Marker** icon.
- 2 Click where you wish to place the micron marker.

The micron marker annotation can be picked up and dragged into the required position. Ensure to place the annotation not over another zone.



4.5.6.2. Fixed micron marker

- 1 Click the Fixed Micron Marker icon.
- 2 Click where you wish to place the micron marker.
- 3 Enter the desired value.
- 4 Confirm.

The micron marker represents a fixed dimension, and may therefore extend off the screen if the magnification is too large or may shrink to a single pixel length if the magnification is too low. Editing the fixed micron marker allows you to change the size.





4.5.7. Measuring

4.5.7.1. Measuring a size

- 1 To measure the size of a certain feature, select the **Point To Point Measure** icon.
- 2 Click the image and keep the left mouse button pressed while drawing a line across the feature you which to measure.
- 3 Release the left mouse button.

The measurement is displayed as a text adjacent to the object.



If you do not wish to display any of the parameters:

1 Double-click the line.

A dialog box opens.

- 2 Remove any items you do not want to be shown.
- 3 Confirm with **OK**.



4.5.7.2. Measuring an angle

- 1 Click the Angular Measurement icon.
- 2 Click the image where you wish to measure the angle.

The measuring angle is shown.

3 Click the side of the angle to move its position.





4.5.7.3. Measuring a length or an area

- 1 Select the desired annotation icon: Linewidth Measure or Radial Measure.
- 2 Click the image where you wish to measure an object.





4.5.7.4. Measuring distances

- 1 Select the desired annotation icon such as:
- Width Measurement Cursors: fixed width
- Height Measurement Cursors: fixed height
- Moveable Width Cursors: variable width
- Movable Height Cursors: variable height

The cursors are displayed.

2 To move the cursor, click the cursor line and hold the left mouse button.





4.5.7.5. Applying extended measuring capabilities (licence: MEASA)

The expanded measuring capabilities refer to adjustable width and height measuring cursors and the rectangle measuring.

This licence offers four cycle measurements instead of only two without this licence. The point-to point measurement can be called up to ten times (without licence: twice). The adjustable measuring lines also can be called up to ten times (without licence: twice).

Requires the licence MESASA.

4.5.8. Editing Annotations

4.5.8.1. Moving an annotation

1 To move the annotation text to a different position, use drag & drop.

4.5.8.2. Undoing the last edit

1 Click the Undo last Edit icon.



4.5.8.3. Hiding/Unhiding annotations

You can show or hide annotations.

- 1 To hide annotations:
 - a Select View/Hide Annotations from the menu.
 - b From the submenu select which kind of annotation you wish to hide.
- 2 To show annotations:
 - a Select View/Hide Annotations from the menu.
 - b From the submenu select which kind of annotation you wish to show.

4.5.8.4. Deleting an individual annotation

- 1 Click the annotation object or text.
- 2 Right-click the annotation object or text.
- 3 Select **Delete** from the drop-down list.

4.5.8.5. Deleting all annotations

- 1 Click the Delete All Visible Objects icon.
- 2 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.5.8.6. Saving annotations

- 1 Click the Save Annotation icon.
- 2 Enter an annotation name.
- 3 Confirm.

4.5.8.7. Loading annotations

- 1 Click the **Load Annotation** icon.
- 2 Select an annotation.
- 3 Confirm.





4.5.9. Displaying crosshairs or graticules (licence: GRATICULE)

4.5.9.1. Crosshairs

1 Select View/Crosshairs from the menu.

Crosshairs are displayed in the image area. In the drop-down menu, **Crosshairs** is ticked.



In order to remove the crosshairs, select View/Crosshairs again.

4.5.9.2. Movable Crosshairs

1 Select View/Movable Crosshairs from the menu.

Crosshairs are displayed in the image area. In the drop-down menu **Movable Crosshairs** is ticked.

2 To move the crosshairs, click the square in the centre and drag.



In order to remove the crosshairs, select View/Movable Crosshairs again.

4.5.9.3. Graticules

1 Select View/Graticules from the menu.

Graticules are displayed in the image area. In the drop-down menu, Graticules is ticked.



- 2 To change the spacing between the graticule lines, select **View/Graticule Spacing**.
- 3 Enter a value and confirm.

| Graticule space | |
|-----------------|--------|
| (Integer) | ОК |
| | Cancel |

In order to remove the graticules, select View/Graticules again.

4.6. Working with recipes

Recipes are used to save a set of SEM parameters which are ideal for a certain type of specimen. When this type of specimen needs to be re-analysed in the future, the SEM parameters can be recalled by opening the saved recipe. Only fine adjustments should then be required. An Expert user (supervisor privilege) may set the SEM parameters for a range of applications and save them as a common recipe that is available to all users. This enables *Novice* users to recall such recipes.

4.6.1. Saving a user-specific recipe

A recipe is a file defining the specific set of parameters of the SEM/FESEM. A default ingredient list defines the parameters to be saved in the recipe.

- 1 Select File/Save Recipe from the menu.
- 2 Enter a file name and confirm. It is recommended selecting a file name which allows you to clearly identify the very type of specimen.

| Save Recipe | X |
|-----------------|--------|
| Recipe Filename | ОК |
| Gold on carbon | Cancel |
| | V V |

4.6.2. Saving a common recipe

Common recipes are available to all users. Saving a common recipe requires the supervisor privilege.

- 1 Select File/Recipe Management/Save Common Recipe from the menu.
- 2 Enter a file name and confirm. It is recommended selecting a file name which allows you to clearly identify the very type of specimen.

| ОК |
|--------|
| Cancel |
| |
| |

4.6.3. Viewing a recipe

In order to check the content of a recipe you can display a list of saved parameters.

1 Select File/View/Edit Recipe from the menu.

A list is displayed.

2 Mark the recipe you wish to view and confirm.

The content of the recipe is displayed.

| R | lecipe::Gold on carbon (User) |
|---|---|
| | Check Vacuum Mode High Vacuum EHT Target = 10.00 kV Signal A = SE2 WD = 36 mm Store resolution 1024 * 768 Collector Bias = 300 V Aperture No. 1 Mag = 14 X Auto BC Off Brightness = 48.5 % Contrast = 42.2 % Auto B Target = 50.0 % Auto C Target = 50.0 % Operating Mode Normal |
| | SaveAs Save Help |

Double-clicking on a parameter allows you to edit the parameter setting.

4.6.4. Executing a recipe

- 1 Select **File/Execute** from the menu.
- 2 Mark the recipe you wish to run.



- 3 If you wish to omit a particular parameter on the list, remove the respective tick.
- 4 Click Execute.

Only one recipe may be run at a time.

4.6.5. Deleting a recipe

- 1 Select File/Recipe Management/Delete from the menu.
- 2 Mark the recipe you wish to delete.
- 3 Confirm.

4.6.6. Creating an ingredient list

The ingredient list defines the contents of the recipe, i.e. the combination of saved parameters. Parameters can be added and deleted.

1 Select File/Recipe Management/Ingredient File Editor from the menu.

The Recipe Ingredient List Editor opens.



- 2 Click Load File.
- 3 Select a recipe file and confirm.
- 4 Click Insert Parameter.

| Aa 1 | ~ | ОК |
|---------------------|---|--------|
| Aa 2 | | |
| Aa 3 | | Cancel |
| Aa 4 | | Cancor |
| ABCC Bri. Cal | | |
| ABCC Contr. Cal | | |
| Airlock Control | | |
| Airlock Monitor | | |
| All Frozen | | |
| All Zones | | |
| Aper Align X Only | | |
| Aper Align Y Only | | |
| Aperture Align X | | |
| Aperture Align Y | | |
| Aperture at X | | |
| Aperture at Y | | |
| Aperture No. | | |
| Aperture Size | | |
| Aperture Wobble | | |
| Auto B Target | | |
| Auto BC | | |
| Auto C Target | | |
| Auto Fn | | |
| Backlash Distance M | | |
| Backlash distance R | | |
| Backlash distance T | _ | |
| backlash distance X | ~ | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

An alphabetical list of parameters is displayed.

- 5 Select the parameter you wish to add.
 - a To simplify the search, enter a key word in the field at the bottom.
 - b Select the parameter and confirm by clicking on **OK**.

The parameter is added to the list.

| Check Vacuum Mode | Help |
|-------------------|------------------|
| EHT Target | |
| Signal A | D. L.L. El |
| Signal B WD | Delete File |
| Store resolution | |
| Collector Bias | Load File |
| Aperture No. | |
| Mag | Insert Check |
| Auto BC | Insort Chock |
| Brightness | |
| Contrast | Insert Parameter |
| Auto B Target | |
| Auto C. Target | Insert Delay |
| BSD Gain | |
| Operating Mode | Move Lip |
| Aper Align X Only | Hore op |
| | Move Down |
| | Delete Item |
| | Save |
| | Save to Common |
| | OK |
| | Cancel |

- 6 To change the order of the parameters, use the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons.
- 7 To insert a delay: Click **Insert Delay**.
- 8 Enter a time and confirm.
- 9 Save the ingredient list:
 - a To save it as a user-specific ingredient list: Click Save.
 - b To save it as a common ingredient list: Click **Save To Common**.

4.6.7. Using the MiniBar to work with recipes

Saving user-defined recipes, editing, and executing is also possible via MiniBar.

- 1 Click the **Recipes** icon on the Mini Bar.
- 2 To save the current SEM/FESEM settings as a user-specific recipe, select **Save Recipe**.
- 3 To view, edit or run a recipe, select **Recent** for the latest recipes or **All Available** for all recipes.
- 4 To run a recipe, click the recipe name.
- 5 To view or edit, click the ... button after the respective recipe name.

A preview list is shown, where you can omit individual parameters.



| Received and an and a second se | ~ |
|---|---------|
| Recent | <u></u> |
| SpecimenA (User) | |
| Gold on carbon (User) | |
| All Available | 8 |
| Save Recipe (default) | |
| | |

Gold on carbon (User)

| Check Vacuum Mode High Vacuum | V |
|-------------------------------|----------|
| EHT Target = 10.00 kV | V |
| Signal A = SE2 | V |
| WD = 36 mm | |
| Store resolution 1024 * 768 | V |
| Collector Bias = 300 V | |
| Aperture No. 1 | V |
| Mag = 14 X | V |
| Auto BC Off | V |
| Brightness = 48.5 % | V |
| Contrast = 42.2 % | V |
| Auto B Target = 50.0 % | V |
| Auto C Target = 50.0 % | V |
| Operating Mode Normal | V |
| Run Recipe | |
| Edit Recipe | |
| | |
| i) | |

Left click to toggle the recipe item

4.7. Saving and managing images

4.7.1. Saving images

After optimising and freezing the image, it can be saved as a TIF (Tagged Image Format) file.

1 Select File/Save Image from the menu.

| Change Directory | Save Settings |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Gold on carbon0.tif Gold on carbon1.tif Gold on carbon2.tif | Filename Gold on carbon Next 3 |
| | Format Max 30 Chars 🖌 Digits 1 |
| | Merge Annotation Colour Merge |
| | User Text |
| < | |

- 2 Enter a file name.
- 3 Select a file name format from the drop-down menu Format.
- 4 Select the numbering of the image file.
- 5 Select the store resolution from the drop-down menu **Store Resolution**.
- 6 You can also add text in the field User Text.This text will be displayed when selecting a file in the Load Image dialog.
- 7 Click Save 'file name'.

4.7.1.1. Selecting TIF image modes and image dimensions

It is possible to save an image in several formats depending on your requirements. In general, *Grey* is recommended.

- 1 Select **File/Save Image** from the menu.
- 2 Go to the **Settings** tab.

| Change Directory Gold on carbon0.tif Gold on carbon1.tif Gold on carbon2.tif | Save Settings Image © Grey 24 Bit Colour * 16 Bit Grey V Pallette Reduction 1 V | Dimensions × 0 Y 0 W 1024 H 768 Set | Area Whole Centre |
|---|--|--|-------------------------|
| Save (File)3.tif | * N.B : This format can | not be loaded back ir | nto the SEM Image |

- 3 Select the Image mode:
- Grey
 - (8 bit, 256 grey scales)

Coloured SEM images which may possibly need to be modified later within the SmartSEM[®] user interface, should be saved as grey images together with the respective colour pallet.

• 24 Bit Colour (16 millions of colours)



IMPORTANT

Images saved as colour images (24 Bit Colour) cannot be reloaded to the SmartSEM[®] user interface, but they can be implemented to most Windows[®] user programs.

 16 Bit Grey (65536 grey scales)
 Exclusively reserved for later image modification by means of commercial programs.



IMPORTANT

When selecting 16 Bit Grey, no annotations, measurements or data zones will be saved.

- 4 Set the image dimensions.
- 5 Click Save 'file name'.

4.7.1.2. Saving images as BMP or JEPG

It is also possible to save SEM images as BMP or JPEG. When using these formats, the SEM images are always saved as grey images with the respective pallet. You cannot save the image in colour.



IMPORTANT

Images in BMP and JPEG format cannot be reloaded to the SmartSEM[®] user interface. Besides, it is not possible to save additional information with the image.

- 1 Place the cursor into the image area.
- 2 Right-click.
- 3 Select Send to/BMP file or JPEG file.

A dialog opens.

| Export JPEG [C:\Progra | m Files\Carl Zeiss SMT L Save Settings | .td\SmartSEM\Images\] | × |
|------------------------|---|--|---|
| | Filename Image | Next 1 | |
| | Format Max 30 Char | s 💌 Digits 1 | |
| | Annotation | Sample ID = Store resolution = 1024 × 768 | |
| | User Text | | |
| Save (File)1.jpg | | | |

4 Go to the **Settings** tab.

| mage | Dimensions | Area |
|--------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| Grey | × 0 | Whole |
| 🔿 24 Bit Colour * | Y O | |
| 🔿 16 Bit Grey | W 1023 | Centre |
| ✓ Pallette | н 767 | c.IPEG Quality- |
| Reduction | | or Ear Quality |
| 1 💌 | Set | 75 |

- 5 Define the image dimensions.
- 6 When saving the image as JPEG:
 - a Enter a value for JPEG Quality.

The value can be between 5 and 95. The smaller the value, the higher the compression (reduced storage place) and the worse the quality of the image when printed.

A default value of 75 is set for **JPEG Quality**. In most cases, this value represents a good compromise between compression of the storage place and quality of the image.



IMPORTANT

Depending on the image content of the respective image, quality and information may be lost even when saving images at high level of JPEG Quality (75-95).

- 7 Return to the **Save** tab.
- 8 Enter a file name.
- 9 Click Save 'file name'.

4.7.1.3. Saving images together with the Windows® overlay (Image Capture Mode)

Actually, the image displayed on the monitor consists of the SEM image itself and a Windows[®] overlay. The overlay contains status bar, toolbar etc., while the centre (scan range) is set to transparent.

When you take a screenshot by using the **<PRINT>** key on the keyboard, the saved image shows only the Windows[®] overlay, whereas the SEM image range is displayed as a green or orange section.

Image Capture Mode should be used to avoid this effect.

1 Select **Tools/Image Capture Mode** from the

menu.

The submenu **Image Capture Mode** is ticked. The **Capture Now** submenu becomes available.

- 2 To activate the function one single time:
 - a Select Tools/Capture Now.

The live image is frozen and saved together with the Windows[®] overlay. A red triangle is displayed in the lower right corner indicating the saved image.

- 3 To activate the function for continuous application:
 - a Select Tools/Image Update Frequency.
 - b In the **Image Update Frequency** panel tick the **Enabled** checkbox.
 - c Enter an interval.
 - d Confirm.

The live image is frozen and saved together with the Windows[®] overlay. A red triangle is displayed in the lower right corner indicating the saved image.



To quit Image Capture Mode, select Tools/Image Capture Mode again.

4.7.2. Taking videos (licence: AVI capture)

The function AVI Capture Mode allows taking video sequences in order to show dynamic processes. The video can be played using the SmartSEM[®] user interface or another Windows[®] application.

Requires the licence AVI Capture.

4.7.2.1. Setting parameters

1 Select Tools/AVI Options from the menu.

As a standard, the created video is saved as a Capture.avi file in the user's current image directory.

- 2 To change the file name or to select another directory, click in the **Capture Filename** and enter the data.
- 3 Set the maximum file size (max. 2047 MB).
- In order to save annotations or measurements together with the video, tick the Annotation Merge checkbox.
- 5 If specific compression routines have been installed under the operating system, these routines can be selected by clicking on **Compression**.
- 6 To set the number of images to be saved, enter a value at **Capture every**.
- 7 Click OK to confirm.To reset the default values, click Defaults.

4.7.2.2. Starting the record

- 1 Select **Tools/AVI Capture**. The AVI Capture toolbar is shown.
- 2 To start recording, click the **Start AVI Capture** icon.

| AVI File Capture Options 🛛 🛛 🛛 🛛 |
|----------------------------------|
| Capture Filename |
| Capture.avi |
| Max filesize 🛛 2047 😪 MB |
| Annotation Merge |
| Compression Reduction 2 💌 |
| 💿 Capture every 📃 200 📚 ms |
| ◯ Capture every 🔲 1 📚 frames |
| Defaults OK Cancel |



4.7.3. Loading images

1 Select File/Load Image from the menu.

Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + O>**.

The Import TIFF dialog opens.

| Image Gallery | Load Standard Data | User Data |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| hange Directory | File information | Load at |
| ld on carbon0.tif | Type Grey | Centre X 0 |
| ld on carbon1.tif | Width 0 | Origin Y 0 |
| age0.tif bt3.tif | Height 0 | XY |
| | Image Reduction | Image Store |
| | Step Frame | Fit to image |
| | User Text | |
| _ | | |
| | 0 | ×. |
| Lord | | 12.1 |

- 2 Select the directory by clicking on **Change Directory**. Confirm by clicking on **OK**.
- 3 Select an image by double-clicking on it.

To return to the live image, select **Scanning/Normal** from the menu.

4.7.4. Using the Image Gallery

The images of a directory can be displayed as an image gallery. The images are shown as thumbnails together with the respective file name.

1 Select **Image/Image Gallery** from the menu.

The gallery is displayed.



2 To select an image, double-click it.
4.7.5. Printing images

1 Select File/Print Image.

Alternatively, type **<Ctr + P>**.

| Print Setup | | × |
|--|--|---|
| Printer: \\D1S5_PS | | |
| Print Annotation and Measurement Colour Merge Size Fit to Page Size Size Size Fit to Page Size Size Size Size Size Size Size Siz | Position Top Middle Bottom Print No. | Printer Print Close Cancel Help |

2 If you wish to print annotations and measurements together with the image, tick the respective checkbox.

To print colour annotations or measurements, the **Colour Merge** checkbox must be ticked as well.

3 In the **Size** section, select the size of the printed image.

If you tick **Zoom**, you should also enter a zoom factor and select the position on the sheet (*Top*, *Middle* or *Bottom*).

- 4 To select the printer, click **Printer**.
- 5 To start the printing process, click **Print**.

4.7.6. Copying images to the Windows[®] buffer (licence: CLIP)

The clipboard functions may be used to copy images to the Windows[®] buffer. As the image is not saved to a storage device such as hard disk or floppy disk but to the central memory of the computer, it can be used for other Windows[®] applications with access to the buffer store.

SEM images or sections of images can thus be copied to other programs without prior storage. On the other hand, SEM images in the clipboard can be added to the stored image.

4.7.6.1. Storing images

1 Select Edit/Clipboard from the menu.

The **Clipboard Copy** tab opens.

| Store resolution | = 1024 * 768 | Copu | Dim | ensions |
|------------------|--------------|---------|-----|---------|
| otore resolution | - 1024 100 | Copy | × | 0 |
| Image | Merge | Area | Y | 0 |
| Reduction | Annotation | Vhole 🗸 | w | 1024 |
| 1 🗸 | Colour Merge | Centre | н | 768 |

- 2 Set the storage resolution by using the drop-down menu.
- 3 Select a reduction factor between 1 (original size) and 8.
- 4 To save data zone, annotations and measurement together with the image, tick the **Annotation** checkbox.
- 5 To save colour annotations or measurements together with the image, tick the **Colour Merge** checkbox.

However, the number of grey values (256) of the image is reduced to 20 as this storage space is required for the annotation.

6 Set the desired dimensions of the image and click **Set**.

4.7.6.2. Inserting images

1 Go to the Paste tab.

| Store resolution : | = 1024 * 768 | Paula | |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|--|
| File information | CLoad at | | |
| Type Colour | Centre 100 | Step Frame | |
| Width 29 | Origin | Image Reduction | |
| Height 17 | XY Y 100 | | |

The field **File information** lists size and type of the image in the buffer.

2 Select the Image Reduction factor.

Depending on the reduction factor, the size of the graticule is displayed on the screen. This graticule shows position and format of the loaded image.

- 3 To change the position of the graticule, use the **Centre**, **Origin**, and **XY** buttons. Selecting YX allows you to freely position the graticule by means of the mouse.
- 4 To compose one image out of four images:
 - a Click Origin.
 - b Tick the Step Frame checkbox.
- 5 To insert the image, click **Paste**.

4.7.7. Transmitting data to a FTP server or a network printer (licence: RE-MARCH)

The FTP Remote Archiving program offers the possibility of transmitting images to a FTP server or a network printer by using a network (TCP/IP).

Requires the licence REMARCH.

1 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM/ImageArchiving.

| Source | Destination Y Net | work Printer |
|--|--|--|
| C:\ Program Files Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd SmartSEM | Gold on carbon0.tif Gold on carbon2.tif Gold on carbon2.tif Image0.tif Spot3.tif | Images for Archive: >> Add All |
| | Refresh | Clear All |
| | | Transfer Close |

2 In the middle field of the **Source** tab, select the files to be sent.

To select several files at the same time, hold the **CTRL** key and click the files.

Click the >> button to copy the selected files to the Image for Archive field.To copy all files at the same time, click Add All.

4 Go to the **Destination** tab.

| 🛱 FTP Image Archiving | |
|---|--------------------|
| Settings Help Source Destination Network P | rinter |
| Choose Image Destination: Codonics Network Printer FTP Archive on remote Server | |
| User: | Log In |
| Password : | Log Out |
| FTP Host : FTPserver.MyCompany.com | Status |
| Image Dir : //MyFTPDirectory | Change Dir |
| Archived Images: | |
| | Host Settings |
| | Transfer Close |
| Logged Out | Waiting for Action |

- 5 Use the radio buttons to select the destination of the image (*Codonics Network Printer* or *FTP Archive*).
- 6 Click Host Settings.
- 7 Enter the required settings.
- 8 Confirm.

| P Archive Server | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Host Name: | FTPserver.MyCompany.com |
| Local Directory: | /MyFTPDirectory |
| odonics Network F | Printer |
| odonics Network F Host Name: | Printer |

- 9 If you wish to sent the data to the network printer, go to the **Network Printer** tab.
- 10 Tick the **Enable Transfers to Network Printer** checkbox.

| | Images Down Page (1-9): 1 Gap Between Images (3): 3 Page Border (5): 5 Box Outline | Scaling : BOX |
|----------------------|---|----------------------|
| Apply Print Settings | | Apply Print Settings |
| Cancel Current Job | | Canad Concert Jak |

- 11 Set the required **Printer Options**.
- 12 Confirm the settings by clicking on **Apply Print Settings**.
- 13 To start the printing process, click **Print**.

The print job can be interrupted by clicking on Cancel Current Job.

4.7.8. Using the Large Image Store Wizard

The Large Image Store Wizard guides you through a process with three main steps to obtain images with high pixel resolution.



IMPORTANT

No annotations can be saved when using the Large Image Store Wizard.

1 From the menu, select Tools/Goto Panel and then Large Image Store Wizard.

Step 1 of 3 is displayed with a list of possible store resolutions and a preview image.

In the SmartSEM[®] main window an image with the resolution of 1024x768 is continuously scanned and displayed.

The image in the main window equals the field of view (FOV) that the final image will cover.



2 Optimise the image as described in section 3.4.7. Changing the magnification will also change the FOV for the final image. The size of the FOV and the pixel sizes for each store resolution are shown in the wizard.

The coloured bar to the right helps you to select a suitable store resolution. Resolutions marked in red and yellow can also be selected, but these resolutions will not provide an optimal image quality.

The store resolution can still be selected according to your requirements, as the coloured bar can only give you a hint on the technical possibilities to exclude resolutions that are too high for the selected area.

3 To continue, select a store resolution from the list and then click **Next**.



Step 2 of 3 is displayed.

An image preview is displayed at the bottom left of the window. A green rectangle shows the area of interest displayed in the large image. The field of view and the rectangle represent the image displayed in the SmartSEM[®] main window. To change the detail displayed in the large image, the green rectangle can be moved in the in the image preview or the SmartSEM[®] main window.



4 To check the alignment, move the green rectangle to different areas. If necessary, optimise the alignment. If you have problems to obtain satisfactory results, restart the procedure by clicking **Previous**.

- 5 Select an End of scan action:
- None: after the scan is complete, it will restart at the beginning
- **Freeze**: after the scan is complete, the scan will be stopped
- Save as TIFF: after the scan is complete, the image will automatically be saved to the user's image directory with the last used Export TIFF settings.
- 6 Click Next.

Step 3 of 3 is displayed.



Depending on the selected store resolution, the acquisition might take several minutes. You can observe the process by moving the green square in the Image preview to a region that is already displayed. If you need to stop the scan to change any settings, you can go back to step 2 by clicking **Previous**.

The selected **End of scan action** will be performed.

If you have selected **Save as TIFF**, a message appears to confirm that the image has been successfully saved.



4.8. Managing users

The SmartSEM[®] software uses the SmartSEM[®] Administrator for user management. By means of the SmartSEM[®] Administrator you can create new users and assign them with certain privileges.

The Administrator creates the various user directories and edits existing folders and user configurations. A user directory is a closed data path which saves frequently modified configuration parameters of the SmartSEM[®] user interface and system software files for the various users.

If each user has their own directory for configuration parameters, the software can be configured in such a way that toolbar, menus, data zones, etc. meet the specific requirements of each user. Thus there is no need to reconfigure the user interface each time SmartSEM[®] is started.

4.8.1. Managing user profiles

4.8.1.1. Starting the SmartSEM[®] Administrator

1 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM/SmartSEMAdmin.

The Administrator Log on window is shown.

| SmartSEM Administrator Log o | n 🔀 |
|------------------------------|--|
| ZEISS | CARL ZEISS SMT |
| | Copyright © Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd 1997-2008 |
| | |
| Us | er Name |
| Pa | ssword |
| | OK |

2 Log on as follows:

Logging on for the first time

Logging on for On initial installation of the SmartSEM[®] software:

a The person responsible for the SEM/FESEM should log on as SYSTEM with a blank password.

The user list is shown.

- b Change the password to a suitable string: Mark *System* in the user list. Select the menu **Users/Edit**.
- c Click Change Password.Change the password. It will take effect on the next log on.
- d Confirm by clicking on **OK** twice.



IMPORTANT

Record the System password in a safe place. If you lose the password a chargeable service visit will be required.

Logging on regularly

On regular log on:

- a Enter username and password.
- b Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



IMPORTANT

Logging on requires Supervisor privileges.

The SmartSEM Administrator window opens showing the user list.

| | Users L | cences Dete | ktor Column/Stage | Other | Database - | Pelp - | | | |
|----|--|---|-----------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|---------|------------|---|
| er | New | Edit D | relete | (h | | | | (0 | _ |
| - | Development | User Directory C\Program Files\Cad Z | Peiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\user | Image Direc | Story Files\Carl Zeiss SMT | Ltd\SmartSEM\images | Anu Anu | Supervisor | |
| | Factory | C:\Program Files\Carl Z | Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\user | default C:\Program | Files\Carl Zeiss SMT | Ltd\SmartSEM\images | Full | | |
| | Guest | C:\Program Files\Carl 2 | Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\user | guest C:\Program | Files\Carl Zeiss SMT | Ltd\SmartSEM\images | Expert | | |
| | and the second sec | C:\Program Files\Carl Z | Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\user | \service C:\Program | Files\Carl Zeiss SMT | Ltd\SmartSEM\images | Full | v | |
| | Service | | | | | | | | |

4.8.1.2. Creating a new user profile

1 Click New.

| | 2 | | | 03 |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| | Users | Licences | Detector | Column/Stage |
| Use | 15 | | | |
| | New | Edt. | Delete | |
| | | | - Distance | |
| | User Name | ▲ User Direct | ory | |
| • | User Name Development | ▲ User Direct C.\Program | ory Files\Carl Zeiss SM | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defaul |
| • | User Name Development Factory | User Direct C.\Program C:\Program | ory Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defaul |
| • | User Name Development Factory Guest | User Direct C:\Program C:\Program C:\Program | ory Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM | TLtd\SmartSEM\user\defaul TLtd\SmartSEM\user\defaul TLtd\SmartSEM\user\defaul |
| • | User Name Development Factory Guest Service | User Direct C:\Program C:\Program C:\Program C:\Program C:\Program | ory Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM Files\Carl Zeiss SM | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defaul T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defaul T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\guest T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\servior |

The New User window opens.

| New User 🔀 |
|--|
| Based on User Template |
| Administrator 🖌 |
| O Based on Existing User |
| Guest 🗸 🗸 |
| |
| OK Cancel |



IMPORTANT

New user profiles are based on user templates or on existing users. This reduces the workload when allocating rights for new users, while still being able to refine the profiles later on.

- 2 To create a new user based on a user template or on an existing user, tick one of the radio buttons.
- 3 Select a profile or an existing user from the drop down list.
- 4 Click OK.

| ~ |
|---|
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |

| Creating new Use | r Profile |
|---|--|
| User Name | Change Password |
| User Directory | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss NTS Ltd\SmartSEM\user\guest |
| Image Directory | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss NTS Ltd\SmartSEM\images |
| Current | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss NTS Ltd\SmartSEM\images |
| User Level Permissi Any level User Privileges Name Calibration Change Image Direct Change Image Direct Change User Direct Extractor Gun Align Gun Off Stage Initialise Supervisor Vent | ions To Maximum -> Expert Calibration Privileges Granted Grant |
| Temporary Calibration | on Privilege Enabled Expires |
| | OK Cancel |

The Creating new User Profile window opens.

5 Enter a User Name.

The user name must consist of at least three but not more than 20 characters.

6 Select a User Directory:

- a Click the ... button to browse the folders.
- b Select a user directory and confirm.

In the user directory, all user specific parameters and configurations such as appearance of toolbar, data zone, and coordinates are stored and can be loaded again.

7 Select an Image Directory:

- a Click the ... button to browse the folders.
- b Select an image directory and confirm.

In the image directory, all images of the user will be saved.

8 Set the User Level Permissions.

Any Level gives access to all available para-meters.

Full, Expert and Novice only enable access to a certain number of privileges and permissions.

| User Level Permission | s | | | |
|-----------------------|---------|----------------------|------------|--|
| 📃 Any level | | To Maximum - | > Expert 💽 | |
| | | | Full | |
| User Privileges | | Calibration Privileg | jes-Expert | |
| Name | Granted | Name Cateo | INOVICE | |

Select the User Privileges.

If ticked, the user is allowed to modify parameters as explained in the following table:



| Checkbox | Privilege |
|------------------------|--|
| Calibration | Enables the user to perform instrument calibration operations. |
| Change Image Directory | Enables the user to change the location, where all images will be saved. |
| Change Toolbar | Enables the user to change the toolbar. |
| Change User Directory | Enables the user to change the location, where all user specific parameters and configurations are saved. |
| Extractor | Enables the user to change the extractor voltage. |
| Gun Align | Enables the user to modify the alignment of the electron beam. |
| Gun Off | Enables the user to switch off the FE filament |
| Stage Initialise | Enables the user to initialise the motorised stage. |
| Supervisor | Enables the user to - start the Administrator, create and edit users - set User Max EHT - modify the filament current - set-up, edit and delete global stage coordinates - save common macros and toolbars - save common recipes - activate Partial Vent on Standby, Z Move on vent, Protect Z, Go to HV@Shutdown, EHT Off & Log Off and Leave Gun ON at Shut- down. - use the bakeout function - start the FIB filament heating. |
| Vent | Enables the user to ventilate the specimen chamber. |



IMPORTANT

Assign SUPERVISOR privileges only to a restricted number of authorised users. The SUPERVISOR privilege permits the user to start the Administrator and to edit or create user directories.

9 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



IMPORTANT

The default password for a new user is the user name.

Continue with assigning a personal password as described in the next section.

4.8.1.3. Assigning or changing a password

- 1 Mark the user whose password is to be assigned/changed.
- 2 Click Edit.

| | Users L | icences Detector Column/Sta |
|-----|--|---|
| Use | New | Edit Delete |
| | Development | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Factory | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Guest | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Service | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | 100 million (100 m | CAR |
| | System | C: \Program Files \Lari Zeiss SMT Ltd \SmattSEM |

3 Click Change Password.

The Change password for.. window opens.

4 Enter the password.It must consist of at least three but not more than 20 characters.

| New Pass | word | жжжж | |
|----------|------|------|--|
| Verify | | жжжя | |

5 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.8.1.4. Modifying a user profile

- 1 Mark the user whose user profile is to be changed.
- 2 Click Edit.
- 3 Change the **Preferences** as desired.
- 4 Confirm.

| 🔏 Sr | nartSEM Admini | strator [SYSTEM] |
|------|----------------|---|
| | Users L | icences Detector Column/Stag |
| User | s New | Edit Delete |
| | User Name | User Directory |
| | Development | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\ |
| | Factory | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM\ |
| | Guest | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Service | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | System | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| • | User1 | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |

4.8.1.5. Deleting a user profile

- 1 Mark the user whose user profile is to be deleted.
- 2 Click Delete.
- 3 Confirm.

| a s | martSEM Admini | strator [SYSTEM] |
|-------|----------------|--|
| Heer | Users I | icences Detector Column/Star |
| U U U | New | Edit Delete |
| | Development | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Factory | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Guest | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | Service | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | System | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartSEM |
| | | |

4.8.1.6. Closing the SmartSEM[®] Administrator

1 Click the cross to close the Administrator software.

| U | sers | Licences | Detector | Column/Stage | Other | Database • | Pelp - | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------|---|---|---|----------------|---|---|----------------|------------|---|
| teri (| New | Edt. | Delete |] | Image Dire | chem | | liser Level | Supervisor | _ |
| - | Development | C:\Program File | s\Carl Zeiss SM | TLtd\SmartSEM\user\defa | at C.\Program | Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Lt | d\SmartSEM\images | Any | Z | |
| | ere reseption | | | | A C10 | FI-10-17-1-01711 | | 6.4 | 122 | |
| - | Factory | C:\Program File | s\Carl Zeiss SM | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defa | at C: verogram | Files/Lan Zeiss SMT Li | d\SmartSEM\images | Full | e | 2 |
| | Factory Guest | C:\Program File C:\Program File | s\Carl Zeiss SM' s\Carl Zeiss SM' | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defa T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\gues | C:\Program | Files/Carl Zeiss SMT Li | d\SmartSEM \images d\SmartSEM \images | Expert | | |
| | Factory Guest Service | C:\Program File C:\Program File C:\Program File | s\Carl Zeiss SM s\Carl Zeiss SM s\Carl Zeiss SM | T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\defa T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\gues T Ltd\SmartSEM\user\servi | C:VProgram | Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Li Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Li Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Li | d\SmartSEM\images d\SmartSEM\images d\SmartSEM\images | Expert Full | | |

4.8.2. Managing user accounts (licence: ACCOUNT)

The utility *SmartSEM User Accounting* allows recording of important information during individual working sessions on the SEM/FESEM. The information is stored in a separate database file. The *SmartSEM User Accounting* is part of the SmartSEM[®] program suite. Requires the licence ACCOUNT.



IMPORTANT

Only Supervisor level users and higher are supposed to manage user accounts and use the SmartSEM Administrator.

4.8.2.1. Starting the SmartSEM User Accounting

1 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM/SmartSEM User Accounting.

The SmartSEM Accounting Log On window is shown.

| SmartSEM Accounting Log on | |
|----------------------------|--|
| ZEISS | CARL ZEISS SMT |
| | Copyright © Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd 1997-2008 |
| | |
| Use Pas | sword |
| | OK Cancel |

- 2 Enter user name and password.
- 3 Confirm by clicking on **OK.**

The User Accounting window opens.

| Accounting [SYSTEM | 4] | | | | | | |
|--|--|---------------|----------|-----------|--------------|---|--|
| Create Act | ivate Owners | Delete | Compact | 2 Help | • | | |
| Log On Date Selection From Date 19.01.2009 | User Name Selection All User Names Select User Name Select Owner | e Development | • | Print | | | |
| Sessions UserName | LogOn | LogOff | Duration | Prints | Tiffs Status | _ | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Accounts | | | | | | | |
| UserName | Sessions Dur | ation Prints | Tiffs | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Totals | | | | | | | |

4.8.2.2. Using the help functions

1 Click Help.

| 🔏 Accounting | [SYSTEM] | | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------|---|--------|---------|-------------|
| Create | Activate | • Owners | Delete | Compact | (P) Help |
| Log On Date Sel From Date 19.01. | ection | User Name Selection O All User Names O Select User Name | | | Print |
| To Date 19.01. Sessions | <u>~</u>] | O Select Dwner | | • | Export |

2 Select Help Contents from the drop-down menu.

The SmartSEM Accounting Help opens.



4.8.2.3. Creating a new database file

1 Click Create.

| Accounting [SYSTEM] | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------|---------|--------|
| | . 1 | 0 | × | ? . |
| Create Activate | Owners | Delete | Compact | Help |
| Log Bri Date Selection | Viser Name Selection | | | |
| From Date | All User Names | | | Print |
| 19.01. 👻 | O Select User Name | | ~ | Euport |
| 🔲 To Date | 🔿 Select Dwner | | ~ | Export |
| 19.01. | | | | |
| Sessions | | | | |

An empty file ('Account.accdb') is created in the directory C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss Microscopy Ltd\SmartSEM\system.

If a file has already been created, a warning message will pop up.

4.8.2.4. Activating/deactivating user accounting

1 To start recording, click **Activate/Activate**.

| 🔏 Accounting [S | SYSTEM | | 10.000 | 5554 | |
|--------------------|----------|--|--------|---------|--------|
| Create | Activate | • Owners | Delete | Compact | Pelp - |
| Log On Date Select | ion | User Name Selection All User Names | | | Print |
| 19.01. | ~ | O Select User Name O Select Owner | | | Export |
| 19.01. Sessions | | | | | |

2 To stop recording, click Active/Deactivate.

4.8.2.5. Deleting session records

This function offers the possibility to delete data in the database as from a specific date.

1 Click **Delete**.

| 📓 Accounting [S | SYSTEM] | | \bigcirc | | |
|--------------------|----------|---------------------|------------|---------|--------|
| Create | Activate | • Owners | Delete | Compact | Pelp - |
| Log On Date Select | ion | User Name Selection | | | Print |
| 19.01. | ~ | O Select User Name | | × . | Export |
| To Date 19.01. | v | C Select Dwner | | ~ | |
| Sessions | | | | | |

- 1 Under **Delete Records To** enter the date.
- 2 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

| Delete Sessions | | X |
|---|--------------|--------|
| Current records in data | atabase | |
| From | 17. Nov. | |
| To | 05. Feb. | |
| Records | 81 | |
| Delete records to | 20.01. OK | Cancel |

A pop-up message appears.

3 Confirm.

4.8.2.6. Grouping users

In order to group users together by the same institute or cost centre you can assign a user to a so-called owner.

1 Click Owners.

| Accounting [SYSTEM] | \bigcirc | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|--------|------------|
| Create Activate | - | Delete | Poart Help |
| Log On Date Selection From Date | User Name Selection | | Print |
| 19.01. | Select User Name | × | Export |
| Sessions | | | |

2 Click Add.

| | count Owners | | | | | |
|------|-----------------|------------|--------|-------|---------|-----|
| | Add | Edit I | Delete | | | |
| Jwne | ers | | | | | |
| | Name | Company | Addr1 | Addr2 | Country | Zip |
| 12 | Cost centre 200 | Carl Zeiss | | | | |

The Creating new Owner window is shown.

Complete the fields.
 The fields Name and Company are compulsory.

| Uwner Heferen | ce = 3 | |
|---------------|--------------------|---|
| Name | Cost centre 200 | |
| Company | Carl Zeiss NTS | |
| Address | Carl-Zeiss-Str. 56 | |
| | 73447 Oberkochen | _ |
| Zip/Post Code | | _ |
| Country | Germany | |

4 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

| . | Account Owners | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|------------|---|-------------------------|--------------|-----|
| Ow | Add | Edit | Delete | | | |
| | Name | Company | Addr1 | Addr2 | Country | Zip |
| • | Cost centre 200 | Carl Zeiss | and the second se | | 1.00.000.000 | |
| Una | assigned Accounts | | Acco | ounts for Cost centre 2 | 200 | |
| Fac Gue Serv | elopment tory st vice | | | ri | | |

To assign a user to an existing owner:

- 1 Mark the owner in the list.
- 2 Mark an entry in the field **Unasssigned** Accounts.
- 3 Click the **arrow** button.
- 4 Close the window by clicking on the cross.

To delete an owner:

- 1 Mark the owner.
- 2 Click Delete.
- 3 Confirm.

| 🖳 Account Owners | | | | | × |
|---------------------|------------|--------|------------------------|---------|-----|
| Add | Edit |)elete | | | |
| Owners | _ | | | | |
| Name | Company | Addr1 | Addr2 | Country | Zip |
| Cost centre 200 | Carl Zeiss | | | | |
| A Alter | | | | | 302 |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Unassigned Accounts | | Acco | unts for Cost centre 2 | 00 | |
| Development | | Use | 1 | | |
| Factory | | _ | | | |
| Service | | > | | | |
| System | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

4.8.2.7. Compressing the database

When the data within the database is modified the file will include unused sections inflating the size of the database file on disk. To remove unused sections and remove errors:

1 Click **Compact**.

| Accounting [SYSTEM] | | | \frown | |
|------------------------------------|--|--------|----------|-------------|
| Create Activate | • Owners | Delete | Compact | 2 - Help |
| Log On Date Selection From Date | User Name Selection All User Names Select User Name | | | Print |
| To Date | Select Owner | | | Export |

A back-up copy (account.bak) will be created in the directory C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss Microscopy Ltd\SmartSEM\system.

The database file will be compacted.

If errors occur during compaction, reset the original state by deleting the file 'Account.accdb' and renameing the file 'account.bak' to 'Account.accdb'.

4.9. Customising the SmartSEM[®] software

4.9.1. Customising joystick and control panel settings

You can change the settings for joystick speed, stigmator sensitivity and the sensitivity of the control panel encoders such as the *Focus* encoder.

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click User Settings.

The User Settings panel opens.

- 3 Use the respective slider to adjust joystick speed, stigmator sensitivity and panel sensitivity.
- 4 Confirm by clicking on **OK.**

| User Settings | × |
|---------------------------|---|
| Joystick Speed = 1.000 | |
| Stig Sensitivity = 1.000 | |
| | > |
| Panel Sensitivity = 1.000 | • |
| Reset User Align | |
| ОК | |

4.9.2. Setting mouse adjustment preferences

This option allows you to use the right mouse button for parameter adjustment when selecting '3 Button wheel mouse'.

You may also show or hide the mouse adjustment image.

1 Select **Tools/Configure Mouse Adjust** from the menu.

The **Mouse Adjustment Preferences** dialog opens.

- 2 Make the desired settings.
- 3 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



4.9.3. Disabling the splash screen on startup

- 1 Go to the **EM Server** window.
- 2 Select **Options** from the menu.

A drop-down menu opens.

| Time | Wind | low Is Always On Top | ~ | F |
|---------------|--------|---|-----|-----|
| 07:39 14-02 | Disa | sle Vindow Pade (for slow systems) | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | Disa | ale Pectore Op Error | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | Log | Progress Information To The Log File | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | Dical | Restore On User have | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | Disal | ole Splash Screen On Startup | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | -2007 | Loading NewStatusBartegipar | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | 2-2007 | Loading MiniBar | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | -2007 | Loading CZToolbarXP | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | -2007 | CZ ToolbarXP Loaded | | 100 |
| 07:39 14-02 | 2-2007 | Loading Annotation toolbar | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | 2-2007 | SmartSEM Load Complete | | |
| 07:39 14-02 | 2-2007 | Application SmartSEM Admin (Via CZ EM Parameter Manager Control, V04.0 | 3 | |
| 08:54 14-02 | 2-2007 | Application SmartSEM Admin (Via CZ EM Parameter Manager Control, V04.0 | 2 | |
| 08:55 14-02 | -2007 | Application SmartSEM Admin (Via CZ EM Parameter Manager Control, V04.0 | - | |
| 09:33 14-02 | 2-2007 | Application Drift Correction Preparation Registered Successfully. | - = | |
| 09:49 14-02 | -2007 | Application Drift Correction Preparation Revoked Registration Successfully. | | |
| 0 00 54 44 00 | 2007 | Application SmartSEM Admin (/in C7 EM Parameter Manager Central)/04.0 | | |

3 Click Disable Splash Screen On Setup.

The function is ticked in order to indicate that it is activated.

4.9.4. Personalising the user interface (User Preferences)

The user preferences offer the possibility to define user-specific pre-settings in the SmartSEM[®] user interface.

4.9.4.1. Selecting the language

- 1 Select Tools/User Preferences.
- 2 Under **User/Language** select *English*, *French* or *German*.

At present, switching to German or French is only possible within certain limits. Help texts are available in English only.

| references | Name | Value | [C |
|---|-------------------------|--|-----|
| Ser TIFE Exerciser | Show TIFF Info tips | Yes | Car |
| Language | Language | English | × |
| Access Level | Access Level | Service | ~ |
| Pressure Units Frror Messages | Pressure Units | mBar | ~ |
| - User Align | Popup Error Messages | No | ~ |
| Reset LUT | Suppress Error Messages | No | ~ |
| - User Directory Setup - Image Directory Setup | Notify On Event | No | ~ |
| Magnification Display | Enable User Align | Yes | ~ |
| Plain Images | Reset LUT on Unfreeze | Yes | ~ |
| age Backlash | User Directory Setup | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartS | |
| - Fast Scanning | Image Directory Setup | C:\Program Files\Carl Zeiss SMT Ltd\SmartS | - |
| - Stage Graphics | Reference Magnification | Out Dev. | ~ |
| - Noise Reduction | Enable Plain Images | No | ~ |
| - M Axis Warning agnification Table M Conditions - Emission Mode - Focus Wobble - Beam - Aperture Align | | | (|

3 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.9.4.2. Selecting the indicated pressure unit

- 1 Select Tools/User Preferences.
- 2 Under User/Pressure Units select Torr, mbar or Pascal.

| Preferences | Name | Value | 0 |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------|-----|
| Jser TIFF Explorer | Show TIFF Info tips | Yes | Car |
| Language | Language | English | × |
| Access Level | Access Level | Service | ~ |
| Error Messages | Pressure Units | mBar | × |
| - User Align | Popup Error Messages | No | × |
| Reset LUT | Suppress Error Messages | No | ~ |
| Inage Directory Setup | Notify On Event | No | ~ |

3 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.9.4.3. Selecting the User Access Level

The setting in **User Access Level** refers to parameters and commands to be selected e.g. in the SEM Status window.

- 1 Select Tools/User Preferences.
- 2 Under User/Access Level select Novice, Expert or Service.

Novice: Enables frequently used parameters and commands *Expert*: Enables parameters and commands which may be helpful for an advanced user *Service*: Activates all available parameters and commands

| ser Preferences | Name | Value | ОК |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------|-------|
| User TIFF Explorer | Show TIFF Info tips | Yes | Cance |
| Language | Language | English | × |
| Access Level | Access Level | Service | ~ |
| Error Messages | Pressure Units | mBar | ~ |
| - User Align | Popup Error Messages | No | ~ |
| Reset LUT | Suppress Error Messages | No | ~ |
| Image Directory Setup | Notify On Event | No | ~ |

3 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

4.9.4.4. Entering pre-defined magnifications

Up to ten fixed magnifications can be entered in the Magnification table for quick access the during imaging procedure.

- 1 Select Tools/User Preferences.
- 2 In the tree structure, click **Magnification Table**.

| User User User Language Access Level Magnification 2 Value Disabled | Cancel |
|--|-------------------|
| Language Access Level Magnification 2 Value Disabled | |
| Access Level Magnification 2 Value Disabled | × |
| | |
| Pressure Units Disabled | <u>×</u> |
| Error Messages Magnification 4 Value Disabled | × |
| User Align Magnification 5 Value Disabled | ~ |
| Reset LUT Magnification 6 Value Disabled | ~ |
| Image Directory Setup | ~ |
| Magnification Display Magnification 8 Value Disabled | ~ |
| Plain Images Magnification 9 Value Disabled | ~ |
| - Stage | |
| Backlash Magnification 10 Value Disabled | <u>~</u> |
| - Fast Scanning | |
| - Stage Graphics | |
| - Stage Y In Tilted Plane | |
| - Noise Reduction | |
| M Axis Warning | |
| Magnification Table | |
| - Magnification1 | |
| - Magnification2 | |
| - Magnification3 | |
| | and the Fax |
| Magnification4 | an. CShirr P# 2 - |
| Magnification4 Select magnification values to use with mag table keys <f4> - up, <ctrl f4=""> - dow with</ctrl></f4> | ing some is |

- 3 Click into the **Value** field of Magnification 1 Value.
- 4 Enter the desired magnification.
- 5 Enter the desired magnification values for the other entries.
- 6 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.

To use the Magnification Table while obtaining an image:

a Press <F4>.

Anytime <F4> is pressed, the next magnification value will be set.

- b To return to the previous magnification value, press **<Ctrl + F4>**.
- c To finish the use of the Magnification Table, press <Shift + F4>.
 The magnification of the SEM/FESEM will be reset to the level that was active before the Magnification Table was first used.

4.9.4.5. Tracking the user alignments (licence: USERALIGN)

The user align function tracks the alignment values each user has utilised for different operating conditions. When these conditions are used the next time, the previous alignment values will be reloaded.

Values are stored in an indexed table, where the index is generated from a combination of the parameters making up the operating conditions.

- 1 To activate the function, select **Tools/User Preferences**.
- 2 In the tree structure, select User/User Align.
- 3 Select Enable User Align Yes.

| Jser Preferences | Name | Value | (ок |
|---|-------------------|-------|--------|
| - User | Enable User Align | Yes | Capcel |
| | | | Cancor |
| Access Level | | | |
| Pressure Units | | | |
| Error Messages | | | |
| - User Align | | | |
| - Reset LUT | | | |
| - User Directory Setup | | | |
| Image Directory Setup | | | |
| Magnification Display | | | |
| - Plain Images | | | |
| Stage | | | |
| Backlash | | | |
| East Scapping | | | |

ResettingThe indexed table is automatically reset everythe tabletime the cathode is changed.

In addition, each user can reset his/her table individually:

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click **User Settings**.
- 3 Click Reset User Align.

| User Settings | × |
|---------------------------|---|
| Joystick Speed = 1.000 | |
| | > |
| Stig Sensitivity = 1.000 | |
| | > |
| Panel Sensitivity = 1.000 | > |
| Reset User Align | |
| ОК | |

4.9.5. Customising the data zone

The data zone displays a special group of annotation objects which are used to show current parameters, such as SEM parameters, username, time or date.

4.9.5.1. Unlocking the data zone

By default, the data zone is locked, so that the parameters stay within the data zone. Before you can make any modifications, you have to unlock the data zone.

- 1 Click the **Select Annotation Object(s)** icon in the annotation bar.
- 2 Click anywhere in the data zone to mark it.
- 3 Right-click the data zone.
- 4 Select **Properties/Unlock this Panel** from the pop-up menu.





4.9.5.2. Inserting a parameter

- 1 Unlock the data zone.
- 2 Select the **EM parameter** icon in the annotation bar.
- 3 Click in the data zone, where you wish to insert the new parameter.
- 4 Select the parameter from the drop-down list.
- 5 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.
- 6 Drag the new parameter to the required position.
- 7 To change font, size or colour:
 - a Right-click the parameter.
 - b Select Properties/Font.
 - c Make your selection and confirm.

4.9.5.3. Inserting a logo

Logos or other images to be inserted have to be in bitmap (bmp) or metafile (wmf, emf) format.

- 1 Unlock the data zone.
- 2 On the **Insert User Bitmap or Metafile** icon in the annotation bar.
- 3 Click the data zone.
- 4 Select a bitmap or metafile and confirm.
- 5 Arrange size and position of the inserted logo.

4.9.5.4. Displaying a value without parameter name

- 1 Unlock the data zone.
- 2 Click the parameter you wish to edit.
- 3 Right-click the parameter.
- 4 Select Properties/SEM Parameter.
- 5 Tick the **Omit Parameter Name** checkbox.





4.9.5.5. Modifying data zone features

You can change background colour, background mode (solid or transparent), select section lines, style of frame, as well as fonts, colour and size of fonts.

- 1 Unlock the data zone.
- 2 Click anywhere in the data zone.
- 3 Right-click.
- 4 Select Properties
 - a To modify fonts, font style, font colour, and size: Select Set Panel Font.
 - b To change background mode: Select **Solid Background Mode/Transparent Back**ground Mode.
 - c To change colour of background: Select **Background Colour**.

4.9.5.6. Deleting a parameter

- 1 Unlock the data zone.
- 2 Click the parameter to be deleted.
- 3 Type ****. Alternatively, right-click and select **Delete**.

4.9.5.7. Saving the customised data zone

- 1 Click the data zone to mark it.
- 2 Right-click in the data zone. Select **Properties/Lock this Panel**.
- 3 Right-click and select Save as Data Zone.
- 4 Enter a file name and save.

4.9.5.8. Loading a saved data zone

- 1 Select View/Data Zone/Load User Data Zone from the menu.
- 2 Select a file and confirm.

4.9.6. Customising the toolbar

The toolbar is fully customisable and can be altered to fit the needs of each individual user.



IMPORTANT

If 'Use Common Toolbar' has been assigned to a user in the user profile, the functions Move Up, Move Down, Save, Load, Remove, Add Button, Add Separator *are NOT available.*

1 Select Edit/Toolbar from the menu.

The Configure Toolbar window opens.

| Co | Configure Toolbar | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-------------------|---|--------|---|-----------|---|-------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|-------------|------|---|---------------|
| ſ | Image | | Button | _ | Туре | _ | Name | _ | Tooltip Text | Button Text | Menu | ^ | ОК |
| | | - | Left | ~ | Special | - | Restore The System Conditions | | Restore Conditions/Load State | Not set | | | Cancel |
| | 17 | | Left | ~ | Parameter | | EHT Target | | Accelerating Voltage/Gun Control | Not set | | | Mauralla |
| | | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB Change Specimen | | Specimen Change/Vacuum Control | Not set | | | Move Down |
| | | | Left | ~ | Dialog | - | VP Control | | VP Control/VP Target | Not set | | | |
| | 1 | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB PA1 | | Pix Avg 1/Cont Avg 2 | Not set | | | Save - |
| - | 2 | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB PA3 | - | Pix Avg 3/Cont Avg 4 | Not set | | | Load |
| | 3 | - | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB PA6 | | Pix Avg 6/Cont Avg 6 | Not set | | | Remove |
| | 4 | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB PA9 | | Pix Avg 9/Frame Int 5 | Not set | | - | Add Button |
| | 5 | | Left | Y | Macro | | TB FI 7 | | Frame Int 7/Frame Int 8 | Not set | | | Mud Deparator |
| | X | - | Left | ~ | Command | | Scan + | | Faster/Slower | Not set | | ~ | Options |
| I | < | _ | | _ | | _ | | III) / | | |) () | | Help |

The toolbar editor is divided into several columns.

- The column **Image** shows the icon. Each icon can have a double assignment activated by means of the left or the middle mouse button.
- The column **Button** shows the assignment. You can toggle between left and middle mouse assignment.
- The column **Type** shows the type of function (*Special, Command, Macro, Dialog, Parameter-Toggle, No Function*) to be executed, when clicking on the toolbar icon.
- The column **Name** shows the name of the function.
- The column **Tooltip Text** shows the text to be displayed when moving the mouse cursor over the icon.
- The column **Button Text** shows the text to be displayed below the icon. To show the button text, click **Options** and tick the **Enable the text below buttons** checkbox.
- The column **Menu** shows the definition of a submenu, that can be assigned to each icon regardless of the assigned functions.

4.9.6.1. Changing the order of the icons

- 1 Select an icon in the **Configure Toolbar** window.
- 2 Click Move Up, respectively on Move Down.
- 3 To insert a space between two toolbar icons, click Add Separator.

4.9.6.2. Deleting an icon

- 1 Select an icon in the **Configure Toolbar** window.
- 2 Click Remove.

4.9.6.3. Adding a new icon

- 1 Select the row in the **Configure Toolbar** window where you wish to insert the new icon.
- 2 Click Add Button.
- 3 Insert an icon:
 - a Double-click the **No Icon** symbol.
 - b Select an icon and confirm.
- 4 Assign a function:
 - a Double-click in the **Type** column.
 - b Select a function from the drop-down list: *Commands*: Lists different commands such as '*EHT* on'.

Dialogs: Lists the commands to call up menus and windows.

Macros: Lists all macros of the standard macro library as well as individual macros which have been implemented to this library.

Parameters: Lists different commands to read or set important parameters of the SEM/FESEM.

Special Functions: Lists the Restore System Conditions and Save System Conditions routines.

Toggle: Lists digital parameters which can be used as a switch.

c Confirm.




- 5 Select *Mid* in the **Button** column.
- 6 Assign a function to the middle mouse button as described in step 4.
- 7 For both assignments, double-click the **Tooltip Text** field and enter a help text.

4.9.6.4. Assigning a menu to an icon

1 Double-click in the **Menu** field of the row you wish to edit.

| nage | | Button | | Туре | | Name | | Tooltip Text | Button Text | Menu | ^ | OK |
|------|---|--------|---|-----------|-----|-------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|-------------|--------|--------------|--------|
| | - | Left | ~ | Special | | Restore The System Conditions | - | Restore Conditions/Load State | Not set | | | Cance |
| * | | Left | ~ | Parameter | | EHT Target | | Accelerating Voltage/Gun Control | Not set | | \mathbf{D} | . Here |
| | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB Change Specimen | - | Specimen ChangeNacuum Control | Not set | \sim | 1 | Move D |
| | - | Left | ~ | Dialog | | VP Control | | VP Control/VP Target | Not set | | | |
| - | | Left | ~ | Macro | - | TB PA1 | | Pix Avg 1/Cont Avg 2 | Not set | | | Save |
| | | Left | ~ | Macro | *** | TB PA3 | | Pix Avg 3/Cont Avg 4 | Not set | | | Load |
| 2 | | Left | ~ | Macro | | TR PA6 | | Pix Ava 6/Cont Ava 6 | Not set | | | Remo |

The Edit Button Menu window opens.

2 Click Add.

| ltem Name | Function Name | Item Type | ОК |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| | | | Cancel |
| | | | Maurille |
| | | | Move Down |
| | | | Add. |
| | | | Add Separator |
| | | | Remove |

3 Double-click *No Function* in the **Function Name** column.

| No Function None | No Function None Cancel |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| | Cancel |
| Cance | |

The **Select Function** window opens.

- 4 Select a type of function from the drop-down list.
- 5 Select one of the functions shown.
- 6 Confirm.

| | | | | 01 |
|---------|---|---|---------|--------|
| Туре | Commands | ~ | Refresh | OK |
| Name | Commands Dialogs Macros (Inc. Mouse Adjustment) CNo Function | | | Cancel |
| Airlock | Special Functions | | | |
| Auto F | ocus+Stig | | | |
| Auto S | ig | | | |
| BSD A | kuto level | | | |
| BSD in | n | | | |
| BSD o | out | | | |
| BSD: \$ | Set TOPO | | | |
| BSD: S | Shadow mode | | | |
| BSD:0 | COMPO | | | |
| BSD:T | 10P0 | | | |
| Bakeo | out Start | | | |
| Beam | Off | | | |
| C1/2/3 | B Hysteresis | | | |
| Marice | effutment can be cet un via a marro | | | 0.0 |

The new menu is shown in the list.

7 Confirm.

| tem Name | Function Name | Item Type | ОК |
|------------------|------------------|-----------|---------------|
| virlock Transfer | Airlock Transfer | Command | Cancel |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | Maurilla |
| | | | Move Up |
| | | | Move Down |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | Add |
| | | | Add. |
| | | | Add Separator |
| | | | Remove |

The toolbar editor shows a small icon in the Menu column.

By double-clicking on this icon, you can directly open the Edit Button Menu window.

| nage | Butto | n | Туре | | Name | | Tooltip Text | Button Text | Menu | ^ | ОК |
|----------|-------|---|---------|---|--------------------|---|-------------------------------------|-------------|------|-----|-------------|
| | Left | ~ | Macro | - | TB Chamberscope | | ChamberScope/Detector Control | TB Cha | | | Cancel |
| <u> </u> | Left | Y | Macro | | TB Stigmation | | Stigmation/Alignment | TB Sti | | | |
| | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB Point To Point | | Point to point/Annotation Text | TB Poi | | | Move Do |
| | Left | × | Macro | | TB BRI/CONT | | Brightness + Contrast/Toggle ABCC | TB BRI | | | |
| * | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB_INLENS_SE2_VPSE | - | Toggle INLENS:SE2/Detector Control | TB_INL | | | Save |
| h = | Left | v | Macro | | Mouse MagWD | | Magnification+Focus/Auto Focus+Stig | Mouse | | | Load. |
| | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB Export TIFF | | Save TIFF/TIFF Export Dialog | ТӨ Ехр | | | Remov |
| | Left | ~ | Macro | | TB Print Image | | Print Image/Printer Dialog | TB Pri | | 111 | Add But |
| Solution | Left | Y | Command | | Airlock Transfer | | Airlock Transfer | Airlock | |) | C was sebar |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Options |

4.9.6.5. Saving the toolbar

Edited toolbars have to be saved with their own names.

- 1 Click Save.
- 2 Select Save As.

If you wish to make the toolbar available to all users, select **Save As Common Toolbar**.

- 3 Enter a name.
- 4 Confirm.

4.9.7. Customising the magnification display

4.9.7.1. Calibrating a user-specific magnification

In the factory, certified magnification standards are used for the calibration of magnification. However, it is possible to carry out a user-specific calibration of the magnification. This will allow the comparison with other instruments or the use of specific application settings.

- 1 Load a calibration standard as specimen.
- 2 Select the User preferences *Expert* or *Service*.
- 3 Set acceleration voltage, working distance, and aperture size typically used for your application.
- 4 Adjust the best possible focus and stigmation.
- 5 Open the **Panel Configuration Bar**.
- 6 Double-click Magnification Calibration.
- 7 Select **Cal User Magnification** from the upper drop-down list.

| Cal Mode = User Magnification | ~ |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Output To = Display/File | ~ |
| Mag Cal Actual Width = 1.000 µm | 1 |
| | |
| OK Cancel | |

Two vertical lines are displayed on the screen.

8 Click the vertical lines and use them to mark an exactly defined distance on the image. Refer to the documents delivered with the calibration standard.

| SmartSEM. | er Itale Vecces Vod Hels | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| * 🗊 📝 🛒 🎧 💁 🛃 | 3. 4. 5. 1 | 12 📾 12 🖙 💻 | •• 😤 🏦 🍘 📾 |
| Solution | Hamilication Calibration | - | |
| | Cal Mode - User Magnification | | |
| | Output To = Display/File | | · · |
| | Mag Cal Actual Witth + 10.00 µm | | |
| | DK Devel | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| For Help, press F1 | | LB: Enderneis - 10.0 % MS: Contrast - 32.1 % | Macro Ide Daniel III / Guni / Dilli / |

- 9 Click into the Mag Cal Actual Width field.
- 10 Enter the value (μm) of the distance between the two vertical lines.
- 11 Confirm by clicking on **OK** twice.
- 12 Close the Magnification Calibration window.
- 13 Place the cursor into the image area and right-click.
- 14 Select User Calibration Enable.







Now, the calculation and setting of the magnification is based on the user-specific calibration. This is symbolised by an asterisk next to the micron marker in the data zone.

To disable the user-specific calibration:

- a Place the cursor into the image area.
- b Right-click.
- c Select User Calibration Enable so that the tick is being removed.

4.9.7.2. Calibrating an output device

The magnification is the ratio between the edge length of the image displayed on an output device and the edge length of the scanned range on the sample. This means that it depends on the selected output device.

If a defined range of the specimen is scanned and imaged on the monitor, the magnification will correspond to the value X_1 . If the same specimen range is scanned and imaged in a Polaroid, the magnification will correspond to the value X_2 . The value X_2 is 3-4 time inferior to the value X_1 (depending on the monitor size), a Polaroid being 3-4 times smaller than the image range on the screen.

When exchanging or installing an output media on a SEM/FESEM, a re-calibration is necessary if the size of the presentation or print image has been changed.

- 1 Select the User preferences *Expert* or *Service*.
- 2 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 3 Double-click Magnification Calibration.
- 4 Select **Cal Output Device** from the upper drop-down list.

| Magnification Calibra | ion 🛛 🗴 |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Cal Mode = Output Dev | ice 🔽 |
| Output To = Display/File | • |
| Output Dev cal actual = | : 198.000 mm |
| | |
| ОК | Cancel |
| | Cancel |

Two vertical lines are displayed on the screen.

- 5 Click the vertical lines and use them to mark an exactly defined distance on the image.
- 6 Click into the **Output Dev cal actual** field.
- 7 Enter the value (*mm*) of the distance between the two vertical lines.
- 8 Confirm by clicking on **OK** twice.



9 Close the Magnification Calibration window.

4.9.8. Showing the installed licences

The licences installed on your SEM/FESEM can be shown from the SmartSEM[®] Administrator.

- 1 Open the SmartSEM[®] Administrator.
- 2 Click Licences.

A window with all installed software licences is displayed.

The checkboxes in the **Standard** column indicate the standard licences.

The checkboxes in the **Enabled** column indicate which licences are active.

| Sm | nartSFM Administ | trator [S | YSTEMT | | | |
|-------|---------------------|-----------|------------|---------------------|--|---------|
| l | Jsers Lid | cences |) | etector Column/Sta | nge Other Databa | se Help |
| Licen | ces for SIGMA-08-15 | - | | | | |
| | Install From Disk | | All Licens | and (Temp) | | |
| | Install Floir Disk | | All Licenc | es (remp) | | |
| - | Restore Licences | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | PartNumber 🔺 | Standard | Enabled | SalesCode | Description | |
| • | 348224-6031-000 | V | V | -ACCOUNT | User Accounting | |
| | 348224-6041-000 | V | V | LOWVOLTS | Low Voltage Working | |
| - | 348224-6042-000 | V | V | EXTVOLTS | Extended Voltage Range | |
| | 348224-6048-000 | | ~ | HIGH-CURRENT | High Current Mode | |
| | 348224-6050-000 | ~ | v | FINESTEP | Stage Fine Step | |
| | 348224-6079-000 | | v | OPTIPROBE | OptiProbe | |
| | 351434-6022-000 | ~ | v | USERALIGN | User Align | |
| | 351434-6024-000 | | v | DEFECT-REVIEW | Defect Review | |
| | 351434-6029-000 | | ~ | FISHEYE | Fish-Eye | |
| | 351434-6043-000 | | v | KNIGHTS CAMELOT | Knights Camelot integration | |
| | 351434-6060 | | v | COLOUR-MODE | Colour Mode | |
| | 351434-6061 | | V | PIEZO-INTEGRATION | Piezo Integration | |
| | 351434-6062 | | ~ | STATIC-STERE0 | Static Stereo | |
| | 351434-6063-000 | | ~ | SMARTIMAGE | SmartImage Enhancement | |
| | 351434-6091-000 | | ~ | SMART-STAGE-MAPPING | Smart Stage Mapping | |
| | 351434-6092-000 | | V | REPORT-GENERATOR | SmartSEM Report Generator | |
| | 351434-6109-000 | | V | NAVIGATOR | Stage Navigator | |
| | 351434-6113-000 | | V | IMAGESTITCH | Image stitching licence | |
| | 7000008 | | | -PARTICLE | Analytical I/F Particle Scan Application | |
| | 7000444 | | | -DUAL IMAGE | Dual Image - Win2K Uniplinth only | |
| | 7000613 | | ~ | -TIFF16 | 16 bit TIFF (Uniplinth only) | |

You can sort the list according to part numbers, sales codes or descriptions. To do so, click into the respective column title.

4.10. Remotely controlling the SEM/FESEM

4.10.1. Using RS232 (licence: REMCON)

The program RemCon32 offers the possibility of remotely controlling the SEM/FESEM by using the serial interface (RS232). Thus, it is possible to read or control specific parameters of the SEM/FESEM. This option is especially useful if an EDX/WDX system is attached to the SEM/FESEM as it enables communication between both systems by means of the serial interface.

- 1 Start the SmartSEM[®] user interface.
- 2 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM/RemCon32.
- 3 Enter your username and password.

The RemCon32 window opens.



- 4 Select **Comms/Settings** from the menu.
- 5 Enter the port settings.
- 6 If you wish that the port automatically starts after starting RemCon32, while the window is reduced, tick the **Open port and minimise** checkbox.
- 7 Confirm by clicking on **OK**.



- 8 To display the transmitted commands and replies, select **Comms/Echo On**.
- 9 For test purposes it might be helpful to use RemCon 32 in local mode:
 - a Select Comms/Local Mode from the menu.
 - b Enter commands and queries manually.

If correct communication is possible, the respective reply is displayed in the window and the command is executed in the SmartSEM[®] user interface.

4.10.2. Using Windows XP Remote Desktop Connection (licence: Remote SEM)

Remote operation of the SEM/FESEM is possible using the Windows XP Remote Desktop Connection feature.

See the Window help on Using Remote Desktop Connection or contact your network administrator for information on configuring Windows XP Remote Desktop Connection to operate over your network.

To see the live microscope image over a remote connection, Image Capture Mode must be turned on.

Image Capture Update Frequency should be set to the minimum value of 100 ms, which is only available if the Remote SEM licence is present.

Remote SEM requires a minimum of 10 Mbps network bandwidth for useable operation, but a 100 Mbps LAN connection is recommended for true real time remote operation. If bandwidth is limited, fast scan rates should be avoided and reduced raster should be used when possible to minimise network traffic.

4.11. Communication with additional software

4.11.1. Communicating with Camelot software (licence: KNIGHTS CAMEL-OT)

Knights Camelot software is a CAD navigation tool for locating specific features on a semiconductor die. It works by registering the specimen with the design of the die to allow the CAD image and SEM images to be synchronized to the same field of view. It is also possible to overlay the image with parts of the design.

Requires the licence KNIGHTS CAMELOT.

1 Select **Tools/Camelot Interface** from the menu bar.

The Camelot Properties panel opens.

2 Click **Start Listening**. The indicated state changes from *Waiting* to *Listening*.

| Camelot Pr | operti | 25 | | | X |
|------------|------------------|----------------|--------|---------|---|
| Connect | Reg | Main | Layers | Options | L |
| Conne | ction rt Numb | er <u>5000</u> | 1 | | |
| | St | art Lister: | ning | | |
| W | 'aiting | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | _ |

4.11.2. Reading wafer defect files (licence: DEFECT REVIEW)

Defect review is used to find defects on a wafer or mask based on the results from KLA Tencor results file.

Requires DEFECT REVIEW licence as well as STAGEREG and CENTRE licences. Requires the KLA Tencor Resultsfile Specification V1.7

- 1 Select Tools/Go To Panel from the menu bar.
- 2 Double-click **Defect Review**.

| ~ | Load Properties |
|--|---|
| Defects | (|
| No file loaded | Wafer Map |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Action on double click | Display Image |
| Action on double click Show images Show details | Vidth 64 Height 32 Set 1 |
| Action on double click Show images Show details Goto sample location Auto rotate | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Set 1 |
| Action on double click Show images Show details Goto sample location Auto rotate Use magnification: | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Stage registration |
| Action on double click Show images Show details Goto sample location Auto rotate Use magnification: Generate spiral scan | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Stage registration Stage Registration Focus Mapping |

3 Click Load and select a defect file (*rff).

4.12. Backing up / restoring data

When upgrading to a new PC or when reinstalling Windows on the PC, SmartSEM[®] configuration and calibration data is lost. SmartBackup allows you to keep the data without having to recalibrate the workstation.

4.12.1. Creating a backup

- 1 Close the EM Server.
- 2 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM Service/SmartBackup Tool.

The SmartBackup window opens.

| Backup Operation | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------|
| Version Installed: | SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
| Serial Number: | Not Available | |
| Destination Path: | | Browse |
| | | Backup |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

- 3 To select a backup directory, click **Browse**.
- 4 Enter a file name.
- 5 Click Save.



6 To backup the data to the selected directory, click **Backup**.

| Backup Operation | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------|
| Version Installed: | SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
| Serial Number: | Not Available | |
| Destination Path: | C:\MyBackup.smartbackup | Browse |
| | | Backup |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

- 7 A message shows that the backup was sucessful.
- 8 Confirm with **OK**.



4.12.2. Restoring data

Once a backup has been made, it can be restored to regain the configuration and calibration data on a new PC or new Windows installation.

- 1 Close the EM Server.
- 2 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM Service/SmartBackup Tool.

The SmartBackup window opens.

| Version Installer | t: SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|--------|
| Serial Number | ; Not Available | |
| Destination Pat | h: | Browse |
| | | Backup |
| | | |
| | | |

- 3 Go to the **SEM Restore** tab.
- 4 To select a previously saved backup, click Browse.

| imartBackup V1.2 | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------|
| EM Backup SEM Restore | | |
| Restore Operation | | |
| Version Installed: | SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
| Serial Number: | Not Available | |
| Source Path: | | Browse |

- 5 Select the backup file.
- 6 Click Open.

| Browse for Sma | artBackup Files | | | | | ? 🛛 |
|--|--|--|------------|-----|------|--------------|
| Look in: | 👄 Y500Q11BGU | (C:) | ~ | G 🦻 | بي 🥙 | |
| My Recent Documents Desktop My Documents My Computer | 945e51bfb8bc6 Documents and Documents and Profischerung, Program Files Quarantine SmstStBuinsta SmstStBuinsta SmstStBuinsta moves moves moves MyBackup.smart | f7d60dacfe30a Settings y4fze ler tbaclup | | | | |
| | File <u>n</u> ame: | MyBackup.smartba | ackup | | ~ | <u>O</u> pen |
| My Network | Files of type: | Backup Files (*.sm | artbackup) | | ~ | Cancel |

| A r | nessage shows that the system is compatible. | SmartBa | ackup - Compatibility Check 🛛 🔀 |
|-----|--|---------|---|
| 7 | Confirm with OK . | ٩ | System is compatible for restore operation. |
| | | | ОК |

8 Click Restore.

| M Backup SEM Hestole | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------|
| Restore Operation | | |
| Version Installed: | SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
| Serial Number: | Not Available | |
| Source Path: | C:\MyBackup.smartbackup | Browse |
| Backup Information | | |
| Version: | SmartSEM Version 5.05 Beta 27 | |
| OS: | XP | Bestore |
| Serial Number: | Not Available | - Hestere |
| Compatibility: | Compatible | |

A message shows that the restore process has completed successfully.

9 Confirm with **OK**.

| SmartBa | ickup - Restore Operation 🛛 🛛 🔀 |
|---------|---|
| ٩ | Restore process has completed sucessfully |
| | ОК |

4.13. Working with optional accessories

4.13.1. Using the Laser Finder

The Laser Finder is an accessory option that is designed to ease finding the area of interest on the specimen surface. It consists of a chamber mounted laser, which is only illuminated in TV mode. The laser spot is visible in the image of the CCD camera. It is used to make specimen navigation easier.

For details on operation refer to the Instruction Manual Laser Finder.

4.13.2. Using the Quiet Mode

The automatically controlled **Quiet Mode** is optionally available.

It allows switching off the pre-vacuum pump after specimen exchange when the vacuum threshold is achieved. This will provide a more comfortable noise level for operator and SEM/FESEM while reducing power consumption of the pre-vacuum pump.

Requires particular hardware.

- 1 Go to the **Vacuum** tab of the **SEM Controlss** panel.
- 2 Tick the Vac Quiet Mode checkbox.

The Quiet Mode is activated: The pre-vacuum pump will be switched off when the vacuum threshold is achieved.

| То | deactivate | Quiet | Mode, | untick | the | checkbox. |
|----|------------|-------|-------|--------|-----|-----------|
|----|------------|-------|-------|--------|-----|-----------|

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|----------------|-------------------|--------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| System Vacuu | um = 2.76e-006 ml | Dar |
| Gun Vacuum | = 1.11e-009 mbar | |
| Vent inhibit = | None | |
| Vac Status = | Ready | |
| Column Cham | ber valve = Close | d |
| EHT Vac read | dy = Yes | |
| Column pump | ing = Ready | |
| Pump | | /ent |
| Partial Vent | on Standby | |
| | | |

4.13.3. Measuring the specimen current

The specimen current is the current flowing through the specimen. It corresponds to the total number of electrons that hit the specimen.

A specimen current monitor can be attached to the SEM/FESEM as an optional accessory.

The Faraday cup consists of a strongly absorbing material with a cavity covered by an electronmicroscopic aperture.

- 1 Load a Faraday cup into the specimen chamber.
- 2 Pump the specimen chamber.
- 3 Switch on the electron beam.
- 4 Set a magnification that allows transmission of the complete electron beam into the cavity through the aperture orifice.
- 5 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 6 Double-click Specimen Current Monitor.
- 7 Tick the **SCM On** checkbox.

The measurement is started. The measured value is displayed in the field **Specimen I =**.

The ground connection of the sample holder is interrupted to interpose a pico-ampere meter. If there is no risk that secondary electrons or backscattered electrons leave the Faraday cup the displayed current is the same as the incident beam current.

8 In order to switch to **Spot** mode, tick the **Spot** checkbox.

| Specimen Current Monitor | × |
|--------------------------|---|
| Specimen I = 100.00 nA | |
| SCM Status = Valid | |
| Spot | |
| | |

CAUTION

For all SEM/FESEM, except MERLIN: Risk of damaging objective lens or specimen due to collision During specimen current measurement the touch alarm is deactivated. Ensure to untick the SCM On checkbox after finishing the specimen current measurement.

4.13.4. Using the Plasma Cleaner

The Plasma Cleaner is an optional accessory that allows you to decontaminate the specimen chamber and any loaded specimens.

The Plasma Cleaner generates reactive gas-phase radicals in a plasma. This plasma is fully contained in the Plasma Cleaner unit. The radicals migrate into the specimen chamber and chemically react with unwanted hydrocarbons.

After a plasma cleaning cycle, the specimen surface provides optimal imaging conditions even at very low imaging voltages.

CAUTION

Sensitive specimen materials might suffer damage from plasma cleaning. We recommend to test this on specimens of the same material before cleaning any important specimens.

4.13.4.1. Activating the Plasma Cleaner

CAUTION

Unstable pressure or unwanted reactions with inserted gas can damage specimen or vacuum system.

The chamber pressure needs to be stable during plasma cleaning. If the gas injection system or the charge compensation function are active, the gas insertion will affect the pressure range and can create unwanted reactions with the inserted gas. Do not use GIS or CC when using the Plasma Cleaner.

- 1 Check that the gate valve of the airlock is closed. Do not use the airlock while using the Plasma Cleaner.
- 2 Switch off the EHT.

CAUTION

The pressure range applied during plasma cleaning can damage the electron source. To protect the electron source from the harmful pressure range, close the column chamber valve.

- 3 Close the column chamber valve:
 - a Go to the Vacuum tab.
 - b Click Column Chamber valve = and set it to Closed.

4 From the menu, select Tools/Goto Panel and then Plasma Cleaning.

Plas

The Plasma Cleaning window is displayed.

5 Check that the Plasma Cleaner controller hardware is switched on and the **Connected** LED is active in the software.

6 Select a recipe from the **Recipe** drop-down list.

There are five preset recipes for different purposes that can not be edited. Additionally, you can create custom recipes (see next section).

7 To start the plasma cleaning, click **Start** cleaning.

The plasma cleaning process starts.

| | Edit Recipes. | 🔍 🥥 Connected 🌙 | RF On |
|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|
| plasma ignition pressure = 5.00e | -001 mbar | Chabled | Plasma On |
| plasma pressure = 5.00e-001 mb | bar | | Fault |
| | | Plasma Cleaning Se | quence |
| plasma time = 0.05 Hours | | Wait | ing for vacuum |
| -laser and - 14 W | | stab | lieina pressure |
| plastia power = 14. W | elsens total time = .0.05 Here | - 4 | in an |
| _ | 12 New 2012 14:00 | 🗴 🔘 Wait | ing for ignition |
| Schedule cleaning cycle at: | 12-1007-2012 14:00 | + | |
| No cleaning cycle is scheduled | | Clear | ning |
| | | | 100 |
| | | | ng - |
| | | Einis | hed |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes | | | |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes Cleaning status = Off | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes Cleaning status = Off asma Cleaning | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning |
| Pasma cleaner connected = Yes Cleaning status = Off asma Cleaning Recipe | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning |
| Pasma cleaner connected + Yes Ceaning status = Off asma Cleaning Recipe Quick Sample Clean | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleane |
| Resma cleaner connected = Yes Deaning status = Off asma Cleaning Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean | Vew Log | Stat cleaning Edit Recipes | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleane |
| Tama clean connected + Yes Deaning status - Off asma Cleaning Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Chamber Clean | Vew Log | Stat cleaning Edit Recipes | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleano Connee Enable |
| Tama clean connected + Yes Deaning status - Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Sample Clean Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleane O Connei Enable |
| Tama cleaner connected + Yes Dearing status - Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean V | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleane Conner Enable |
| Tama cleaner connected + Yes Dearing status - Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean v Long Chamber Clean v test | VewLog | Stat cleaning | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleann Conner Enable Plasma Cle |
| Tasma cleaner connected + Yes Dearing status = Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Sample Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean v test | View Log | Stat cleaning Edit Recipes | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleaning Connei Enable Plasma Cle (|
| Tasma cleaner connected + Yes Dearing status = Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean v test plasma time = 0.05 H | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleane Connei Enable Plasma Cle (|
| Tasma cleaner connected + Yes Dearing status = Off Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Could Sample Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean v test plasma time = 0.05 Hi | view Log | Stat cleaning | Plasma Cleane Connee Enable Plasma Cle |
| Alama cleaner connected + Yes Deaning status - Off asma Cleaning Recipe Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Quick Sample Clean Long Chamber Clean Long Chamber Clean v test plasma time = 0.05 Hi | View Log | Stat cleaning Edit Recipes | Stop cleaning Plasma Cleaning Connei Enable Plasma Cle (|

To avoid damage, various parameters are changed automatically in the following sequence:

- The turbo pump is slowed down by 10 nitrogen impulses
- The specimen chamber is vented for 40 seconds
- The turbo pump is switched off
- Only the pre-vacuum pump remains active

The current status is displayed under **Plasma Cleaning Sequence**.

If the selected recipe involves nitrogen purges, the number of purge cycles (1) is displayed next to the flow chart. The arrow shows which steps will be repeated.



8 Wait until the Finished LED activates. This indicates that the plasma cleaning process is complete.

| | prasma total time - v. | | |
|---|------------------------|---|------------------|
| Schedule cleaning cycle at: | 12-Nov-2012 14:00 | Wats | ng for ignition |
| No deaning cycle is scheduled Cleaning cycle complete. (See log file for details) | | Clean Clean Purgi Purgi Finis | ing ng hed |
| Vac Status = Pumping | 1 | | |
| Plasma State = Disabled | | | |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes | - | | |
| Cleaning status = On | View Log | Start cleaning | Stop cleaning |

The chamber will be pumped.

9 Wait until 'Vac Status = Ready' is displayed. Gun and EHT can then be switched back on and you can return to regular SEM/FESEM operation.



IMPORTANT

You can view a log file that contains all relevant events by clicking 'View Log...' This log file can be used for troubleshooting and to determine when the next plasma cleaning process should be sheduled.

| Plasma Cleaner.Log - Editor | |
|---|---|
| Datei Bearbeiten Format Ansicht ? | |
| 10:19:47 25-09-2012 :Plasma cleaning finished | • |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : Writing parameters to Evactron: | |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : -> Ignite pressure: 0.500000 mbar | |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : -> Plasma power: 10.000000 W | |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : -> Plasma time: 00:01:00 | |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : -> Plasma pressure: 0.500000 mbar | |
| 13:03:05 25-09-2012 : -> Purge disabled | |
| 13:03:06 25-09-2012 : Evactron enabled for cleaning | |
| 13:03:07 25-09-2012 :Evactron state: READY | |
| | T |

4.13.4.2. Creating custom recipes

The five preset cleaning recipes should be enough for most applications.

In addition to the five preset recipes, you can create recipes for custom cleaning cycles.

1 Click Edit Recipes...

The **Cleaning Recipes** list is displayed with the five preset recipes. These recipes are fixed. This means they can not be edited or deleted. Therefore, **Edit...** and **Delete...** are greyed out. If you want to know whether or not a recipe can be edited, check the respective entry in the **Type** column.

2 To create a new recipe, click Add...

| Гуре | Recipe Name | Ignition Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Power (Watts) | Plasma Time (hh:mm) | Purge Pressure (mbar) | Purge Time (hh:mm) | Cycles | Total Time (hh:mm |
|-------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| Fixed | Quick Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:03 | | | | 00:03 |
| Fixed | Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| Fixed | Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 20.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| Fixed | Long Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 01:00 | | | | 01:00 |
| ixed | Long Chamber Clean with Purge | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 00:45 | 0.80 | 00:45 | 8 | 12:00 |
| - | | | m | | | | | | |

The **Cleaning Recipe** window opens.

- 3 Enter a name for the cleaning recipe.
- 4 Select the desired values according to your specific application.
- 5 If nitrogen purge cycles are necessary, tick the **Purge enabled** checkbox. This will add additional values that can be edited.
- 6 Once the settings are complete, click **OK**.



The recipe is now added to the list of available recipes. In the **Type** column the new recipe will be displayed as *User*, which tells you that the recipe can be edited or deleted.

| Туре | Recipe Name | Ignition Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Power (Watts) | Plasma Time (hh:mm) | Purge Pressure (mbar) | Purge Time (hh:mm) | Cycles | Total Time (hh:mm |
|-------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| Fixed | Quick Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:03 | | | | 00:03 |
| Fixed | Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| Fixed | Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 20.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| Fixed | Long Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 01:00 | | | | 01:00 |
| Fixed | Long Chamber Clean with Purge | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 00:45 | 0.80 | 00:45 | 8 | 12:00 |
| Jser | Test | 0.40 | 0.40 | 5.00 | 00:01 | 0.60 | 00:01 | 2 | 00:04 |
| | | | m | | | | | | , |

4.13.4.3. Setting up a schedule

If you want to schedule the next plasma cleaning, you can set up a date and time for an automated decontamination cycle.

- 1 To select a date for your cleaning schedule, click the calendar icon (*1*).
- 2 Once you have selected the date, enter a time
 (2) and activate the Schedule cleaning cycle
 at: checkbox (3).



The cleaning cycle schedule is now active. 30 seconds before the scheduled cleaning cycle a countdown will be displayed to inform you that a cleaning cycle is about to start. You have the following options:

- To abort the countdown and start the cleaning cycle right away, click Start Now.
- To abort the countdown and cancel the scheduled cleaning cycle, click **Cancel**.
- To start the cleaning cycle as scheduled, no action needs to be taken.

4.13.4.4. Returning to regular SEM/FESEM operation

- 1 To be able to return to regular SEM/FESEM operation,
 - click Stop cleaning to abort a cleaning cycle
 - close the window if no cleaning cycle is running.

The chamber will be pumped.

Wait until 'Vac Status = Ready' is displayed.
 Gun and EHT can then be switched back on and you can return to regular SEM/FESEM operation.

5. Troubleshooting

ErrorWhen an error message occurs, a message window will pop up. This indicates a serious condition
which must immediately be drawn to the operator's attention.Most error messages are self-explaining.

The following table summarises important error symptoms and how to remedy.

| Keyword | Symptom | Possible reason | Recommended action |
|--|---|--|--|
| Stage | Stage does not move. Stage does not move accu- rately. | Stage needs to be initialised. | Initialise the stage. Refer to section 5.1. |
| | A stored stage position can- not be approached. | | |
| | Absolute stage movement is required. | | |
| Stage/Joystick | Under TV control, the direc- tion of dual joystick move- ment and direction of stage movement seem to be differ- ent. | TV joystick angle does not fit for the selected CCD camera. | Change the joystick TV angle. Refer to section 5.2. |
| Stage/Joystick | Stage cannot be moved by using the joystick | Joystick Disable checkbox is ticked | Untick the checkbox in the Stage tab of the SEM Controls panel |
| OptiProbe | | After cathode replacement, after re-alignment of the electron optic column | Calibrate OptiProbe. Refer to section 5.3. |
| Touch alarm | Touch alarm message is shown. | Specimen or sample holder has touched objective or wall of the specimen chamber. | Reset touch alarm. Refer to section 5.4. |
| Temperature, water flow | Error message 'Stage Board too hot' (or sim- ilar) is shown. | Flow of cooling water is not OK. | Check water flow and tempera- ture. Refer to section 5.5. |
| EHT | EHT cannot be switched on. | Column chamber valve is closed. | Select Airlock panel from the Panel Configuration Bar. Click Open Column Chamber Valve . |
| MERLIN TM workstation freeze | The workstation has crashed. | CAN communication has failed. | Check the CAN communication as described in section 5.7. |

5.1. Initialising the stage

The stage needs to be initialised before any absolute stage movement can be executed.

Executing this function requires the *Stage Initialise* privilege in the user profile. Prerequisite: Specimen chamber has to be evacuated.

- 1 Select Stage/Stage initialise from the menu.
- 2 Confirm by clicking on Yes.

| • | |
|---|--|
| | |
| | |

IMPORTANT

If initialisation of the stage does not solve the stage problem, contact your Carl Zeiss service engineer.

| SmartSE | М | X |
|---------|-------------------------------|------------|
| ? | Initialise Sta Are you sur | age re? |
| Ye | s | No |

5.1.1. Defining the post initialisation position of the stage

You can configure the position to which the stage drives after the initialisation procedure. Otherwise the stage will drive to the centre position.

Changing this setting requires the Supervisor privilege.

- 1 Open the SmartSEM[®] Administrator.
- 2 Click Column/Stage.
- 3 In the Stage Post Initialisation Position field, enter the desired position.

Alternatively:

- a Move the stage to the required position.
- b Click Set to current Posn.
- 4 To activate the function, tick the Post Init. Posn Valid checkbox.

| SmartSEM Administrator [SYST] | M] | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Users Licences | Detector Column/Stage | Other Database Help |
| Column/Stage | | |
| Column/Chamber Options | | Stage Post Initialisation Position |
| | | Post Init X = 65.000 mm |
| Airlock Type = Open X | | Post Init Y = 65.000 mm |
| Airlock Monitor | | Post Init Z = 0.500 mm |
| Airlock Control | WDS Gate valve motor. | Post Init T = 0.0 * |
| UDS VDS | | Post Init R = 0.0 * |
| Stage Options | | Post Init M = 0.000 mm |
| Custom Stage | | Set to current position |
| Klein 5 Axes MK2 | 🗹 🗙 Enabled | Post Init, Posn Valid |
| Stage Motor = Yes 💌 | V Enabled | Lens Clearance |
| Rotate Limit | Z Enabled | Lens Clearance = 5.000 mm |

5.2. Changing the joystick TV angle

In TV mode (chamberscope) it might occur that dual joystick (optional) and stage seem to move to opposite directions. This is because the selected CCD camera is installed in a certain angle relatively to the stage. Thus, the camera shows a side-inverted view.

To remedy, change the joystick TV angle setting in the software. Changing this setting requires the *Supervisor* privilege.



IMPORTANT

If you are working with two CCD cameras: The joystick TV angle can only be set for one CCD camera. When selecting the other CCD camera, you have to change the setting.

- 1 Open the SmartSEM[®] Administrator.
- 2 Click Column/Stage.

| | Detector Column/Stage Othe |) Jatabase Help |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| olumn/Stage | | |
| Column/Chamber Options | | Stage Post Initialisation Position |
| | | Post Init X = 65.000 mm |
| Airlock Type = Open X 🔹 | | Post Init Y = 65.000 mm |
| Airlock Monitor | | Post Init 7 = 0.500 mm |
| Aidack Control | U/DS Gate using motor | Perturb T = 0.0* |
| | w b 5 date valve filotor. | |
| WDS | | Post Init R = 0.0 * |
| Stage Options | | Post Init M = 0.000 mm |
| Custom Stage | | Set to current position |
| Klein 5 Axes MK2 | ✓ X Enabled | Post Init.Posn Valid |
| Stage Motor = Yes 💌 | Y Enabled | Lens Clearance |
| ✓ Rotate Limit | Z Enabled | Lens Clearance = 5.000 mm |
| Joystick | 🗹 T Enabled | |
| CAN Hard Panel | R Enabled | |
| Jauntiak TV Anala - 72.0* | M Enabled | |
| | | |
| Exchange Braking | | |
| Safe Stage Position for STEM | Hard R Limits | |
| Safe STEM X = 0.000 mm | Stage Tilt Direction = Tilt to Left | |
| | | |

- 3 Double-click the Joystick TV Angle field.
- 4 Enter an angle depending on the installation location of the CCD camera.
 When the CCD camera is installed: at the back: Enter 180°. at the front: Enter 0°. at the side: Enter 90°.



5.3. Calibrating OptiProbe

After cathode replacement or after re-alignment of the electron optic column, OptiProbe has to be calibrated.

A calibration wizard facilitates the calibration procedure.

| Parts required | Part no. |
|--|-----------------|
| Faraday cup, orifice diameter at least 200 µm | 348342-8055-000 |

- 1 Load a Faraday cup into the specimen chamber.
- Set WD 5 mm and select spot mode.
 Focus the spot into the orifice of the Faraday cup.
- 3 Select Start/Programs/SmartSEM/Opti Probe calibration.
 The OptiProbe Cal dialog opens.
- 4 Click OK.

| About OptiProbeCal | | × |
|--------------------|--|----|
| | OptFrobaCel Version 1.1.0.1 Copyright © 2008 Cerl Zeiss SMT Ltd Calibration Tool for OptFroba Option | OK |

The OptiProbe Cal window opens.

| DptiProbeCal | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|-------|-------|--------------|
| SEM Status EHT Target = 1.00 kV Aperture No. = 1 High Current = Off Extractor V Target = 3.00 kV | Probe Current: 0.0 pA | Stort | Pause | Stop Exit |
| ogress: | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

5 To start the calibration, click **Start**.

The User Action window is shown.

6 Click OK.

An automatic calibration routine is performed, which takes about fifteen minutes.

- 7 When the calibration procedure is finished, a message appears.
- 8 To finish the dialog, click **Yes**.

Now OptiProbe is ready to be used.

| User Action | | × |
|----------------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| Place spot cursor in | to Faraday cup, Press | OK to continue |
| | OK | |
| | | |

| User Action | × |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| OptiProbe calibration completed | . Do you wish to close this program? |
| | |

5.4. Resetting touch alarm

To prevent damage, a touch alarm is integrated in the SEM/FESEM: If specimen or sample holder touch chamber walls, detectors or objective lens, the stage is stopped immediately. An audible warning and an on-screen message are given.

- 1 Accept the warning by clicking on **OK**.
- 2 Move the stage in the reverse direction.

| EM Server | | |
|-----------|---------------------------|------|
| | WARNING Stage Touching | |
| Ok | | ZARK |

5.5. Checking water flow and temperature

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click Water Flow/Temperature.

The Water Flow/Temperature panel opens.

3 Check the entries.

Note that the current values for **EO Temp** and **EO Temp Limit** are only shown in case of an error.

| Water Flow/Temperature |
|-------------------------|
| Stage Too Hot = No |
| EO Too Hot = No |
| |
| Water OK = Yes |
| EO Temp = 0.0 °C |
| EO Temp Limit = 35.0 °C |
| |
| SEM Overheat = OK |
| Reset Overheat Close |

Resetting To reset overheat: overheat

- a Remedy the reason for overheating.
- b Click Reset Overheat.
- c Close and restart SmartSEM[®].

| EO Temp = 0.0 °C | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| EO Temp Limit = 35.0 °C | |
| SEM Overheat = OK | |
| Reset Overheat | Close |

5.6. Checking water flow and temperature (MERLINTM only)

- 1 Open the **Panel Configuration Bar**.
- 2 Double-click Water Flow/Temperature.

The Water Flow/Temperature panel opens.

3 Check the entries.

If a value is critical, it is displayed in red.

| Water Flow and Temperature 🛛 🔀 |
|--------------------------------------|
| Stage Too Hot = No |
| EO |
| EO dynamic flow = normal |
| EO dynamic temperature = normal |
| EO static water flow = normal |
| EO static water temperature = normal |
| Water Flow |
| Water OK = Yes |
| Water flow temperature = 0.0 °C |
| Water return temperature = 0.0 °C |
| |
| Water Temperature Status |
| water in high critical = No |
| water in low critical = No |
| water out high critical = No |
| water out low critical = No |
| |
| Close |

5.7. Checking the CAN communication (MERLINTM only)

If the workstation does not react to your commands anymore:

- 1 Open the Panel Configuration Bar.
- 2 Double-click CAN Communication.

The CAN Communication window opens.

3 Check the entries.

If any of the values is indicated as Yes,

a make sure that all cable connections between workstation and PC are plugged in correctly.

If this does not help,

a reset the workstation as described in the workstation manual.

IMPORTANT

If the problem persists, contact your Carl Zeiss service engineer.

| CAN Communication |
|-----------------------|
| EHT Comms Fail = No |
| Vac comms fail = No |
| Stage comms fail = No |
| Close |

6. Summary of software functions

The different software functions can be called via:

- Menu bar
- Panel Configuration Bar
- Toolbars
 Toolbar
 Annotation bar
- Shortcuts

6.1. Menus

The different panels and dialogs necessary to operate the SEM/FESEM can be called by using the menu bar and its submenus.



6.1.1. Menu File

The menu File offers the possibility

to manage recipes (i.e. a 'snapshot' of a samplespecific set of SEM/FESEM parameters),

- to load, save and print images,
- to use annotations, and
- to close SmartSEM[®].



6.1.1.1. Execute Recipe

Opens the Select and Execute Recipe window.

- Select Recipe section Allows selection of a recipe.
- **Preview** section Checkboxes to activate/deactivate a parameter.
- **Help** Calls the help function.
- Cancel Aborts the selection.
- Execute Runs the selected recipe.



6.1.1.2. Save Recipe

Opens the Save Recipe dialog.

- **OK** Confirms the selection.
- **Cancel** Aborts the selection.
- VV

Allows you to select a recipe ingredient list.

| ve Recipe | |
|-----------------|--------|
| Recipe Filename | ОК |
| Gold on carbon | Cancel |
| | V V |

6.1.1.3. View/Edit Recipe

Opens the Select Recipe dialog.

- Select recipe section Allows you to select a recipe.
- OK Confirms the selection.
- Cancel Aborts the selection.
- **Help** Calls the help function.

| Sample1 (User) Sample2 (User) | OK |
|----------------------------------|------|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | Help |

6.1.1.4. Recipe Management

Opens a submenu with three selections.





- Select file to delete section Allows you to select a recipe.
- OK Confirms the selection.
- **Cancel** Aborts the selection.
- Help Calls the help function.



Save Common Recipe

- OK Confirms the selection.
- **Cancel** Aborts the selection
- VV

Allows you to select a recipe ingredient list.

Ingredient File Editor

- Help Calls the help function.
- Delete File Deletes the selected file.
- Load File Loads the selected file.
- Insert Parameter Adds a parameter.
- Insert Delay Adds a delay.
- Move Up Changes the position of the item in the list.
- Move Down Changes the position of the item in the list.
- **Delete Item** Removes an item from the list.
- Save
 Saves the list so that it can be used together with a user-specific recipe.
- Save to Common Saves the list so that it can be used together with a common recipe.
- Close
 Closes the Ingredient File Editor.





6.1.1.5. Load Image

Opens the Import TIFF window.

Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + O>**.

| Image Gallery | Load Standard Data User Data |
|--|--|
| Change Directory Gold on carbon0.tif Gold on carbon1.tif Gold on carbon2.tif Image0.tif Spot3.tif | File information Load at Type Grey Wridth 0 Height 0 |
| | Image Reduction Image Store Fit to image User Text |
| | |

6.1.1.6. Save Image

Opens the Export TIFF window.

Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + E>**.

- Change Directory Selects the directory.
- Save xxx.tif Saves the file.
 - **Annotation** Has to be ticked, when annotations or measurements should be saved with the image.
- **Colour merge** Has to be ticked, when colour annotations or measurements should be saved with the image.

| hange Directory | Save Settings |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| id on carbon0.tif | Filename |
| id on carbon1.tr id on carbon2.tif | Gold on carbon Next 3 |
| | Format Max 30 Chars M Digits 1 |
| | Merge |
| | Annotation |
| | Colour Merge |
| | User Text |
| | |
| | < |

6.1.1.7. Print Image

Opens the Print Setup window.

Alternatively, type <**Ctrl + P**>.

Refer to section 6.1.1.8.

| Printer: \\D1S5_PS | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Print Annotation and Measurement Colour Merge | Position Top Middle Bottom | Printe |
| Size | Print No. | Cance |
| ⊘ Zoom 6.5 ✓ | 1 | Help |

6.1.1.8. Print Setup

- Annotations and Measurements Prints annotations and measurements together with the image.
- Colour Merge Has to be ticked, when colour annotations or measurements should be printed.
- Size Selects the size of the image (*Fit to Page/ Zoom*)
- Position Selects the position on the sheet (*Top/Middle/ Bottom*).
- **Printer** Opens the printer selection dialog.
- **Print** Prints the image.
- Close Closes the dialog.
- Cancel Aborts the selection.
- Help Calls the help function.

6.1.1.9. Load Annotation

Offers the possibility to load a previously saved annotation.

6.1.1.10. Save Annotation

Offers the possibility to save an annotation or a set of annotations.


6.1.1.11. Log Off

Shuts down the SmartSEM[®] user interface and all other SmartSEM[®] applications such as the RemCon32 program. The EM Server remains active.

- Yes Confirms the action.
- No Aborts the action.

| 🗖 Smar | tSEM 🛛 🔀 |
|--------|---------------------------------------|
| 2 | Closing the software Are you sure? |
| Ye | 5 No |

6.1.1.12. Exit

Shuts down the SmartSEM $^{\ensuremath{\text{\scriptsize B}}}$ user interface. The EM Server remains active.

- Yes Confirms the action.
- No Aborts the action.

| 🗖 Smar | tSEM 🛛 🔀 |
|--------|---------------------------------------|
| 2 | Closing the software Are you sure? |
| Ye | s No |

6.1.2. Menu Edit

The menu Edit offers the possibility

- to edit current or saved images, e.g. by modifying brightness and contrast, inserting measurements or annotations, copying images by using the buffer store,
- to edit the user-specific current toolbar,
- to work with annotations,
- and to copy and paste items.

| nart | SEM | | | | |
|------|--|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| Edit | View | Beam | Detection | Image | Scann |
| | Input LI Display Toolbar Annota Insert A Insert F | UT LUT tion Annotati Point to I | on Text Point Marker | Ctrl- Ctrl- Ctrl- | FA FT FM |
| 1 | Copy Paste Clipboa | rd | | Ctrl- Ctrl- | FC ⊦V |

6.1.2.1. Input LUT

Opens the EM LUT Editor window.

The LUT editor is an applet that allows you to modify the Input LUT

Requires the licence GAMMALUT.



6.1.2.2. Display LUT

Opens the EM LUT Editor window.

The LUT editor is an applet that allows you to modify the Display LUT

Requires the licence GAMMALUT.



6.1.2.3. Toolbar

Opens the Configure Toolbar window.

| age | | Button | | Туре | Name | Tooltip Text | Button Text | Menu | ^ | OK |
|---------|---|--------|---|-----------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|------|---|-----------|
| ALC: NO | | Left | ~ | Special | Restore The System Conditions | Restore Conditions/Load State | Not set | | | Cancel |
| * | | Left | ~ | Parameter | EHT Target | Accelerating Voltage/Gun Control | Not set | | | Marcalla |
| | | Left | ~ | Macro | TB Change Specimen | Specimen Change/Vacuum Control | Not set | | | Move Dov |
| | | Left | ~ | Dialog | VP Control | VP Control/VP Target | Not set | | | |
| * | - | Left | ~ | Macro | TB PA1 | Pix Avg 1/Cont Avg 2 | Not set | | | Save |
| * | | Left | ~ | Macro | TB PA3 | Pix Avg 3/Cont Avg 4 | Not set | | | Load |
| | - | Left | ~ | Macro | TB PA6 | Pix Avg 6/Cont Avg 6 | Not set | | | Remov |
| • | | Left | ~ | Macro | TB PA9 | Pix Avg 9/Frame Int 5 | Not set | | | Add Butt |
| * | - | Left | ~ | Macro | TB FI 7 | Frame Int 7/Frame Int 8 | Not set | | | Hud Jopan |
| | | Left | ~ | Command | Scan + | Faster/Slower | Not set | | - | Options |

• OK

Confirms the action.

- Cancel Aborts the action.
- Move Up Changes the position of the selected toolbar icon.
- Move Down Changes the position of the selected toolbar icon.
- Save

Save As: Saves the toolbar with a user-specific name. Save As Common Toolbar: Saves the toolbar that can be recalled by other users.

- Load Loads a previously saved toolbar.
- **Remove** Deletes the selected toolbar icon.
- Add Button Inserts a new toolbar icon.
- Add Separator Inserts a space between the toolbar icons.
- Options Opens the Global Toolbar Options panel.
- Help

Calls the help function.

6.1.2.4. Annotation

Shows annotations. Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + A>**.

6.1.2.5. Insert Annotation Text

Opens the Annotation Caption window.

Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + T>**.

• Insert Into Caption

Time Now Inserts the current time.

Date Now Inserts the current date.

User Name Inserts the name of the current user.

- WordWrap Enabled If ticked, text is made up.
 - **OK** Confirms the selection.
- Undo Cancels the selection.
- Insert New Adds another annotation.
- **Cancel** Aborts the selection.

Annotation Caption Caption Bold on carbon Insert into Caption Undo Insert New Time Now Date Now User Name OK Cancel

6.1.2.6. Insert Point to Point Marker

Adds a point to point marker. Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + M>**.

6.1.2.7. Copy

Copies an item. Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + C>**.

6.1.2.8. Paste

Inserts an item. Alternatively, type **<Ctrl + V>**.

6.1.2.9. Clipboard

Allows you to copy and paste images by using the buffer store. Requires the licence CLIP.

| | | | Dim | ensions |
|------------------|--------------|---------|-----|---------|
| Store resolution | = 1024 ^ /68 | Copy | × | 0 |
| Image | Merge | Area | Y | 0 |
| Reduction | Annotation | 🗹 Whole | w | 1024 |
| 1 🗸 | Colour Merge | Centre | н | 768 |

Store resolution

Selects the storage resolution.

• Copy

Copies the image to the buffer.

Reduction

Allows you to reduce the size of the stored image. Selection possible between 1 (original size) and 8.

Annotation

If ticked, data zone, annotations and measurements are copied together with the image.

- **Colour Merge** Has to be ticked, if colour annotations or measurements should be copied.
- Whole

If ticked, the whole screen area, which will be overlayed blue, will be copied as the image.

- **Dimensions** Sets the image dimensions.
- Set

Adopts the dimension settings.

| opy Paste | | |
|---|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| Store resolution : | = 1024 * 768 🛛 💽 | Paste |
| File information - Type Colour Width 29 | Centre Origin X 100 Y 100 | Image Reduction |
| neight 17 | X,Y | |

- Store resolution Selects the storage resolution.
- **Centre** Displaces the position of the shown graticule.
- Origin Displaces the position of the shown graticule.
- YX Displaces the position of the shown graticule.
- Paste Inserts the image.
- Image Reduction Sets the image reduction factor.

6.1.3. Menu View

The menu **View** offers features mainly referring to the design of the SmartSEM[®] user interface.

Moreover, it is possible to enable or disable a certain group of measurements and annotations.

In the SEM Status window, the user can establish a list of different parameters which can be displayed and interactively changed in this window.

| m 5 | mart | SEM - | SYSI | EMJ | | | | |
|------------|------|--------|---------------------|---------------|-----|-------|------|------|
| File | Edit | View | Beam | Detection | Ima | ge | Scan | ning |
| × | | T D | oolbars. ata Zon | e | | Ctrl+ | ⊦В | • |
| | | Т | oggle Vi | sible Dialogs | | F3 | | |
| | - | Т | oggle Fi | ull Screen Im | age | Shift | +F3 | |
| | | M | lovable | CrossHairs | | | | |
| | 20 | C | rosshair | 's | | | | |
| | | G | raticule | | | | | |
| | 1.0 | G | raticule | Spacing | | | | _ |
| 8 | | s | EM Stat | us | | Ctrl+ | -I | |
| | - | A | nnotatio | n | | | | • |
| 9 | | Т | humbna | ils | | | | |

6.1.3.1. Toolbars

Opens the **Toolbar Views** window. Alternatively, type **<CTRL+B>**.

| oolbar Views | 6 2 |
|--|---|
| Toolbars User Toolbar (the main toolbar for the application) Status Bar (shows tips and current machine state) | User Toolbar Tool Tips Show Immediately (no delay) Show (after a delay) Hide |
| Thumbnails (store and retrieve images) Annotation Bar (for drawing and measuring on the image) | Showing tooltips immediately can help when learning to use or demonstrating the system. The options above apply ONLY to the user toolbar. |
| Mini Bar (quick access to common functions) AVI Capture (for recording a series of images) DeckingPanel (allows docking of SEM panels) | |

- By deactivating the checkboxes the respective feature is hidden.
- One of the radio buttons below User Toolbar Tool Tips has to be selected.

Show immediately/Show: A short explanation (tool tip) is displayed whenever the mouse button is placed on one of the user toolbar icons.

Hide: The tool tip information is not shown.

6.1.3.2. Data Zone

Allows you to select the data zone to be shown.

| 🚟 Smart | SEM - [SYSTEM] | |
|-----------|--|--|
| File Edit | View Beam Detection Image Scannin | ng Stage Vacuum Tools Help |
| * | Toolbars Ctrl+B | ✓ Show Data Zone Ctrl+D Display Default Data Zone |
| | Toggle Visible Dialogs F3 Toggle Full Screen Image Shift+F3 | Load User Data Zone |
| Ł | Movable CrossHairs Crosshairs Graticule Graticule Spacing | |
| 92 | SEM Status Ctrl+I Annotation Thumbnails | 390 |

- **Toggle Data Zone <Ctrl + D**> Shows/hides the data zone.
- **Display Default Data Zone** Shows a standard data zone.
- Hide Data Zone(s) If ticked, the data zones are not shown.
- Unhide Data Zone(s) If ticked, the data zones are shown.
- Load Data Zone Allows loading a data zone.

6.1.3.3. Toggle Visible Dialogs

Shows/hides visible dialogs. Alternatively, type **<F3>**.

6.1.3.4. Toggle Full Screen Image

Hides all bars and panels (complete Windows[®] interface) to show a full screen image. Alternatively, type **<SHIFT + F3>**.

To show bars and panels again press **<SHIFT + F3>**.

6.1.3.5. Movable Crosshairs

• Displays movable crosshairs If this function is activated, a tick is shown in the pull-down menu.

6.1.3.6. Crosshairs

 Displays crosshairs If this function is activated, a tick is shown in the pull-down menu.

6.1.3.7. Graticule

• Shows a grid on the image. If this function is activated, a tick is shown in the pull-down menu.

6.1.3.8. Graticule Spacing

Allows you to select the space between the graticule lines.

- OK Confirms the selection.
- Cancel Aborts the selection.

| (Integer) | OK |
|-----------|--------|
| 128 | |
| | Cancel |

6.1.3.9. SEM Status

This submenu opens the **SmartSEM Status** window which allows showing, editing and setting of frequently used SEM parameters.

- **Display** Shows the selected parameters.
- Select Allows you to select the parameters to be shown.
- File Allows you to load, save or delete a combination of parameters.

| SmartSEM Status | × |
|---|---|
| Display Select File | |
| Brightness = 50.0 % EHT = 0.00 kV EHT Off EHT On | |

6.1.3.10. Thumbnails

Shows thumbnails.

•

6.1.4. Menu Beam

The menu **Beam** allows you to control the electron beam parameters.



6.1.4.1. EHT On/EHT Off

Switches the acceleration voltage EHT on or off.

6.1.4.2. Gun Setup

Opens the **Gun Service** panel. This submenu is reserved for the service engineer in order to set specific gun para-meters.

Each Schottky emitter has its individual values for filament heating current and extractor voltage. The respective values are set by the Carl Zeiss service staff after the cathode has been changed.

CAUTION

Modifications of the filament heating current affect emitter life and resolution. Therefore, any modification should be discussed with the local service engineer in advance.

6.1.4.3. Emission

Changes to emission image mode. Mainly used by service engineers.

6.1.4.4. Accelerating Voltage

Opens the EHT Target panel.

- OK Confirms the setting.
- Cancel Aborts the setting.

| (kV) | OK |
|------|--------|
| 10 | |
| | Cancel |

6.1.4.5. Apertures

Brings the Apertures tab to the fore of the SEM Controls panel.

6.1.4.6. Beam Shift

Opens the Beam Shift panel.

- **Mag/Focus** Activates the magnification/focus function.
- **BeamShift** Activates the Beam Shift function.

| Beam Shift | × |
|------------|------------|
| Mag/Focus | Beam Shift |
| Beam Shift | |
| Auto Stig | |
| | |

6.1.5. Menu Detection

Offers the possibility to select detection settings.



6.1.5.1. Detectors

Allows you to select a detector. The selected detector is ticked.

6.1.5.2. Mixing

Allows you to mix the signals of two different detectors. If active, this submenu is ticked. Requires the licence SIGMIX.

6.1.5.3. Further submenus depending on installed detectors

Allow controlling the detectors installed.

6.1.6. Menu Image

The menu **Image** allows you to freeze the image, to perform noise reduction, process images, and to manage images.



6.1.6.1. Noise Reduction

Opens the noise reduction functions.

- Freeze on = Selects the moment of freezing the image.
- Noise Reduction Selects the noise reduction method. Refer to section 4.4.6.
- Freeze/Unfreeze Freezes/unfreezes the live image.

| Freeze on = I | Command | ~ |
|---------------|-----------------|------------|
| Noise Reduc | tion = Frame Av |) ~ |
| N = 1 | | > |
| | | Com |

6.1.6.2. Freeze/Unfreeze

Freezes respectively unfreezes the live image.

6.1.6.3. Image Processing

Opens the **Image Processing** panel with several tabs. Requires the licence IMMATH.

Threshold tab

- Black threshold Sets the threshold for black.
- White Threshold Sets the threshold for black.
- Image Detect Selects the type of threshold.
- **Reset LUT** Resets the Look-up-table.
- **Update** Calculates the area fraction.

| Image Processing | × |
|---|---|
| Histogram Equalisation Realtime Filtering 2D Filters Image Maths Threshold | |
| Black Threshold = 33.5 % | |
| White Threshold = 100.0 % | |
| Image Detect = Black 💙 Reset LUT | |
| Update Area Fraction = 17.0 % | |
| | |

Image Maths tab

- Source Selects the source.
- Source 2 Selects source 2.
- **Operation** Selects the operation.
- Execute Executes the selected operation.
- **Undo** Aborts the settings.

| 2D Filters Image I | Maths Threshold |
|--------------------|------------------|
| Source | Source 2 |
| Image Store 🛛 🔽 | Image Store |
| Operation | Destination |
| Сору То 🛛 🖌 | Buffer 1 (Valid) |
| | |

Histogram Equalisation tab

- Histogram Equalise Store Calculates the grey scale distribution.
- **Histogram Equalise LUT** Uses Display LUT for image transformation.
- Reset LUT Undoes the calculated Display LUT.

| Image Processing | × |
|---|------------------|
| 2D Filters Image Maths | Threshold |
| Histogram Equalisation Re | altime Filtering |
| Histogram Equalise: Stor Histogram Equalise: LU Reset LUT | |

2D Filters tab

- **Source** Selects the storage to which the transformation will be applied to.
- Filter Selects a filter from the drop-down list.
- **Destination** Defines the buffer.
- Execute Starts the image processing.
- Undo Aborts the settings.

| Histogram Equ | ualisation Re | altime Filtering |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|
| 2D Filters | Image Maths | Threshold |
| Source | Filter | |
| Image Store | 🖌 User Del | fined 🔽 |
| De | uffer 1 (Empty) | |
| De | stination uffer 1 (Empty) 🔽 | |
| De B Execute | uffer 1 (Empty) 🗸 | ndo |



Realtime Filtering tab

- Filter type Selects the type of filter, e.g. Smooth and Differentiate.
- **Smoothing** Sets the degree of smoothing.
- **Differentiate** Sets the degree of differentiation.

| 2D Filters Image N | aths Threshold |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| Histogram Equalisation | Realtime Filtering |
| Filter type | Differentiate 🛛 💌 |
| Smoothing | 0% |
| Differentiate | 0% < |
| Filter Kernel | |

6.1.6.4. Dual Channel

Allows you to display the live image on a second monitor. If active, this submenu is ticked. Requires the licence DUAL-CHANNEL.

6.1.6.5. Copy To

Selects the buffer the image is to be copied to.

6.1.6.6. Copy From

Selects the buffer the image is to be loaded from.

6.1.6.7. Delete all buffers

Deletes all buffers.

6.1.6.8. Find Image

Activates an automatic procedure to find an image.

6.1.6.9. Image Gallery

Shows the images of a directory as thumbnails.

6.1.6.10. Realtime FFT

Shows a Fourier transformation of the current image. Aid for image optimisation.

6.1.7. Menu Scanning

The menu **Scanning** allows to control scanning parameters.



6.1.7.1. Speeds

Offers the possibility to select the scan speed.

Selection of fifteen scan speeds requires the licence SCANEXP.

- OK Confirms the selection.
- **Cancel** Aborts the selection.

| Scan Speed = 3 | |
|---|--------------|
| Scan Speed 1 Scan Speed 2 Scan Speed 3 Scan Speed 4 Scan Speed 5 Scan Speed 6 Scan Speed 7 Scan Speed 7 Scan Speed 9 Scan Speed 10 Scan Speed 11 Scan Speed 11 Scan Speed 12 Scan Speed 13 Scan Speed 14 Scan Speed 15 Scan + Scan - | OK Cancel |

6.1.7.2. Normal

Returns from special scanning modes such as Reduced, Spot, Line, Split, or Dual Mag to the normal scanning mode. If active, this submenu is ticked.

6.1.7.3. Reduced

Scans only a small frame (reduced raster), which is suitable for alignment procedures. If active, this submenu is ticked.

6.1.7.4. Split

Activates the split screen function: The image area is subdivided into two zones. Different detectors can be assigned to each zone.

Requires the licence SPLIT.

6.1.7.5. Quad

Activates the quad split screen function: The image area is subdivided into four zones. Different detectors can be assigned to each zone.

Requires the licence QUAD.

6.1.7.6. Dual Mag

Allows zooming an image without freezing the image at basis magnification.

Requires the licence DUALMAG.

6.1.7.7. Spot

Positions the electron beam on a particular spot on the specimen surface.

Requires the licence SPOT.

6.1.7.8. Line Scan

Allows scanning a defined line while the image is frozen.

6.1.7.9. Rotate/Tilt

Opens the Rotate/Tilt panel.

- Scan Rot If ticked, the scan rotation is active. Requires the licence SCANROT.
- Scan Rotation Allows setting of the scan rotation angle.
- **Tilt Corrn.** If ticked, the tilt correction is active.
- **Tilt Angle** Allows adjustment of the tilt angle.

6.1.7.10. Dynamic Focus

Allows you to dynamically adapt the focus of tilted specimen surfaces.

Requires the licence DYNFOCUS.

- Dyn. Focus If ticked, the dynamic focus is active.
- FCF Setting Sets the degree of the dynamic focus (FCF=Frame Corrected Focus).

| Rotate / Tilt 🛛 🗶 |
|------------------------|
| Dyn.Focus |
| FCF Setting = 0.0 % |
| |
| 🗹 Scan Rot |
| Scan Rotation = 90.0 * |
| |
| |
| Tilt Corrn. |
| Tilt Corrn. |

| Rotate / Tilt | X |
|-----------------------|---|
| 🗹 Dyn.Focus | |
| FCF Setting = -26.3 % | |
| | > |
| Scan Rot | |
| Scan Rotation = 0.0 * | |
| < | × |
| Tilt Corm. | |
| Tilt Angle = 0.0 * | |
| | > |
| | |

6.1.7.11. Store Resolution

Allows you to select the storage resolution from a drop-down menu.

6.1.8. Menu Stage

The menu **Stage** allows you to control several stage functions.



6.1.8.1. Stage Initialise

Initialises the stage. Requires the *Stage Initialise* privilege.

6.1.8.2. Store/Recall

Opens the Stage Points List (refer to section 6.2.35.).

6.1.8.3. Continuous Centre Point

If selected, the software remains in centre point mode after each point selection allowing repetitive centre point actions.

To quit Centre Point mode, right-click.

6.1.8.4. Centre Point

Allows marking a spot in the image which is then automatically moved to the centre of the image area.

Requires the licence CENTRE.

6.1.8.5. Centre Feature

Allows selecting a feature or range in the image which is automatically centered and magnified so that the selected image feature fills the complete image area. Requires the licence CENTRE.

6.1.8.6. Stage Scan

Allows you to scan an exactly defined series of regularly distributed image fields.

• Setup Wizard Opens the wizard.



6.1.8.7. Stage Map

This function allows using a frozen image in zone 0 as an overview for the selection of interesting features on the specimen surface. Requires the licence CENTRE.

6.1.8.8. Survey

Opens the submenu. Requires the licence SURVEY.

6.1.8.9. Navigation

| Stage Navigation | 2 |
|------------------|--|
| | X 0.000 mm XY |
| _ | Y 0.000 mm Z |
| į | T _4.0 * |
| | R 0.0* |
| Toggle view | Idle |
| | Stage stop |
| | Z move on Vent Track Z Protected Z Sample Protection |
| | Sample Holder = None |
| | Specimen Height 0 mm Diameter 10 mm |
| i | Settings |
| | More stage functionality |

- **Toggle view** Changes the view.
- Stage stop Stops the stage immediately.
- Z move on Vent If ticked, the stage is driven to the lowest Z when the specimen chamber is ventilated.
- **Track Z** If ticked, the focus will be automatically re-adjusted after every change if the Z coordinate
 - Protected Z

If ticked, the current Z coordinate is compared with the new coordinate when calling saved stage coordinates.

If the new Z position is higher than the current one, the stage drives to the X/YT/R coordinate first, then to the new Z position.

If the new Z position is lower than the current one, Z is moved first, then the other axes.

- Settings Opens the Stage Navigation setting dialog.
- More stage functionality Opens a drop-down list.

Vacuum Tools Help

Vacuum Status... Ctrl+Shift+V

6.1.9. Menu Vacuum

The menu **Vacuum** allows the control of the most important parameters of the vacuum system.

6.1.9.1. Vacuum Status

Opens the Vacuum tab of the SEM Controls panel.

Alternatively, type <CTR+SHIFT+V>.

Standard vacuum system

- System Vacuum Indicates the vacuum in the specimen chamber.
- Gun Vacuum Indicates the vacuum in gun head and liner tube.
- Vent inhibit None Beam Present: EHT is on
- Vac Status
 Indicates status of vacuum release.
 Ready: Specimen chamber is evacuated and ready to switch on EHT/Gun.
 At Air: Specimen chamber is ventilated.

| • | Column Chamber Valve |
|---|---|
| | Indicates the position (open/closed) of the |
| | column chamber valve which separates |
| | cathode head and specimen chamber. |

- EHT Vac ready Indicates status for high voltage release
- **Pump / Vent**: Evacuates/Ventilates the specimen chamber. **Vent** is available when the electron beam is switched off.

Pump is available after changing the specimen.

Partial Vent on Standby

If ticked, the specimen chamber will be ventilated partially when the SEM/FESEM is switched to STANDBY mode.

Tick the checkbox if the vacuum is OK and the SEM/FESEM will not be operated for a longer time (e.g. weekend). This can help to prevent oil vapours from penetrating into the specimen chamber during STANDBY mode.



IMPORTANT

If the SEM/FESEM is vented or partially vented, it is NOT possible to start the bakeout.

| Detect | ors | Scan | ning | |
|------------------------|--------------|-------------|------|--|
| Vacuum Gun Column Stag | | | | |
| System Vac | cuum = 4.00 |)e-006 mbar | | |
| Gun Vacuu | im = 2.22e-0 | 009 mbar | | |
| Vent inhibit | = None | | | |
| Vac Status | = Ready | | | |
| Column Cha | amber valve | e = Closed | | |
| EHT Vac re | eady = Yes | | | |
| Column pur | mping = Rea | ady | | |
| Pump Vent | | | | |
| 📃 Partial V | ent on Stan | dby | | |
| 📃 Vac Quie | et Mode | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

VP vacuum system

System Vacuum

Indicates the vacuum in the specimen chamber.

- Vent inhibit None Beam Present. EHT is on
- Vac Status Indicates status of vacuum release.

Ready: Specimen chamber is evacuated and ready to switch on EHT/Gun. *At Air*: Specimen chamber is ventilated.

- EHT Vac ready Indicates status for high voltage release
- Pump / Vent:

Evacuates/Ventilates the specimen chamber. **Vent** is available when the electron beam is switched off.

Pump is available after changing the specimen.

Partial Vent on Standby

If ticked, the specimen chamber will be ventilated partially when the SEM/FESEM is switched to STANDBY mode.

Tick the checkbox, if the vacuum is OK and the SEM/FESEM will not be operated for a longer time (e.g. weekend). This can help to prevent oil vapours from penetrating into the specimen chamber during STANDBY mode.

IMPORTANT

If the SEM/FESEM is vented or partially vented, it is NOT possible to start the bakeout.

- Go to HV @ Shutdown If ticked, the SEM/FESEM is automatically switched to HV mode, when switching the SEM/FESEM to STANDBY.
- Chamber Indicates the actual pressure in the specimen chamber in VP mode
- VP Target Slider used to adjust the desired pressure in the specimen chamber
- Go To HV / Go To VP Changes to High vacuum mode/Variable pressure mode.

| Detectors Scanning Gun Vacuum |
|---|
| Gun Apertures Stage Vacuum |
| System Vacuum = 8.33e-005 Torr Vent inhibit = None Vac Status = Ready EHT Vac ready = Yes Pump Vent Partial Vent on Standby |
| VP Control |
| Chamber = 100000 Pa |
| VP Target = 36 Pa |
| Chamber Status = Power Up |
| Go To HV Go To VP |

6.1.9.2. VP Control (VP instruments only)

The submenu VP Control opens the VP Control panel.

• Chamber

Indicates the actual pressure in the specimen chamber in VP mode.

- VP Target Slider used to adjust the pressure in the specimen chamber.
- Go To HV / Go To VP Changes to High vacuum mode/Variable pressure mode.
- Collector Bias Sets the collector bias of the VPSE detector.

| VP Control | × |
|----------------------|----------|
| <u></u> | |
| Chamber = 100000 Pa | |
| VP Target = 36 Pa | |
| Go To HV | Go To VP |
| Collector Bias = 0 V | |

6.1.10. Menu Tools

The menu **Tools** offers the possibility to work with macros, to customise the software and to start recording a video.

| iools Help | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| Ru | Run A Macro | | | | | |
| M | Macro Editor | | | | | |
| G | oto Control Panel | Ctrl+G | | | | |
| G | oto Panel | | | | | |
| Ca | amelot Interface | | | | | |
| In | Image Capture Mode | | | | | |
| Ca | Capture Now | | | | | |
| Image Capture Frequency | | | | | | |
| User Preferences | | | | | | |
| Configure Mouse Adjust | | | | | | |
| Administrator | | | | | | |
| AVI Capture | | | | | | |
| AVI Options | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

6.1.10.1. Run A Macro

Opens the **Selected a Macro to be Executed** dialog.



6.1.10.2. Macro Editor

Opens the macro editor.

| 置い | Untitled - I | EM Mac | ro Edito | 91 | | | | | × |
|-------|--------------|------------|----------|-----------|---------|--|-------|---|-----|
| File | Edit View | Insert | Debug | Generator | Help | | | | |
| | | | î M | | i i i i | | \$ \$ | | |
| | | | | | | | | | ^ |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | Ц |
| | | | | | | | | | ~ |
| < | | | | 127 | | | | > | |
| Curre | nt Line Curr | rent Stati | us: Las | t Error : | | | | | 1.4 |

6.1.10.3. Goto Control Panel

Opens the **SEM Controls** panel, which has six (standard vacuum system) or seven (VP vacuum system) tabs.

Apertures tab

• Aperture Size.

Indicates the selected aperture sizes. Drop-down list allows selection of another aperture

- Focus Wobble If ticked, the focus wobble is active in a reduced raster. Used to optimise the image
- Wobble Fast
 Accelerated wobble speed
- Wobble Amplitude

Allows changing the extent of the wobble movement if the Focus Wobble checkbox is ticked.

Beam Blanked

If ticked, the electron beam is removed from the beam path, the specimen is not scanned any more. This function blanks / unblanks the beam with the scanning coils in the column. The optional Beam Blanker is not controlled by this checkbox.

Emission

Changes to emission mode, which is mainly reserved to Carl Zeiss service staff.

Navigation box

Navigation box for adjustment of the parameters shown on the buttons on the left.

- Mag/Focus Allows setting of the magnification
- Aperture Align Allows setting of the aperture alignment
- Gun Align Allows setting of the gun alignment
- Stigmation Allows setting of the stigmator
- Beam Shift Allows setting of the beam shift.
- Fisheye Mode If ticked, Fisheye Mode is active. Requires licence FISHEYE.
- High Current If ticked, high current mode is active. Requires licence HIGH CURRENT.

| 🕷 SEM Contro | ol | | | | |
|--|-----------------------|-------------|--|--|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | | |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | | | |
| Aperture Size (1) 30.00 μm - Standard | | | | | |
| Focus Wo | bble 🗌 🛛 | Vobble Fast | | | |
| Wobble Amp | litude = 41.1 % | × | | | |
| 🔲 Beam Blar | Beam Blanked Emission | | | | |
| Mag / Focus Aperture Align | | | | | |
| Aperture Alig | n | | | | |
| Gun Align | | | | | |
| Stigmation | | | | | |
| Beam Shift 🚺 🔟 🔰 🔘 | | | | | |
| Fish-Eye M | 1ode High | n Current | | | |

Detectors tab

- Collector Bias Sets the collector voltage.
- Signal A Selects the active signal to be displayed on the monitor
- Signal B Selects the signal to be mixed with A
- **Mixing** If ticked, the signals A and B are mixed (requires the licence SIGMIX)
- Signal Indicates the percentage of signal A while mixing

AutoBC

Sets the AutoBC function Off: Switched the function off B: Automatic adjustment of brightness C: Automatic adjustment of contrast BA: Automatic adjustment of brightness and contrast

- Brightness Adjusts brightness
- Contrast
 Adjusts contrast
- Input LUT

Trans: Regular image display *Gamma:* Allows user to adjust gamma with the **Gamma** slider *Inverse:* Inverts the image display *User:* Opens the **EM LUT Editor** window (section 6.1.2.1.)

Gamma

Adjusts gamma

| Gun | Apertures | Stage |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum |
| Collector Bias | := 300 V .ens 💌 | • |
| Signal = 1.00 | 10 | |
| Signal Adjust- | | Input LUT |
| Auto BC = Off | | Trans |
| Brightness = | 🔘 Gamma | |
| Contrast = 40 | 0.0 % | 🔘 Inverse |
| | | OUser |
| Gamma = 1.U | JUU | |

Gun tab

- EHT Indicates actual acceleration voltage
- Extractor V Indicates the current value of the extractor voltage
- Ext I Monitor Indicates the current value of the extractor current
- Fil I Indicates the current value of the filament heating current
- Beam state
 Indicates the beam state
 Drop-down list allows to switch EHT on/off and to switch the gun on/off

• Leave Gun On at Shutdown

If ticked, the gun stays on when closing the SmartSEM[®] software and changing to STANDBY mode.

- EHT Off@ Log Off
 If ticked, the EHT is automatically shut down
 when the SmartSEM[®] software is closed by
 using Log Off or Exit from the menu
- FIL I Target
 Allows user to set the filament heating current

• Extractor V Target

Requires Service setting under Tools/User Preferences/User Access Level

• EHT Target Allows user to set the

acceleration voltage

Each Schottky emitter has its individual values for filament heating current and extractor voltage. The respective values are set by the Carl Zeiss service staff after the cathode has been changed.

OptiProbe

Allows automatic setting of the probe current. With additional hardware only.

| SEM Contro | l | | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------|--------|--|--|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | | |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | | | |
| EHT = 3.00 k | V | | | | |
| Extractor V = | 3.00 kV | | | | |
| Ext I Monitor = | = 200.0 µA | | | | |
| Fill = 2.000 A | 1 | | | | |
| Beam State = | Beam On | ~ | | | |
| 🔽 Leave Gur | n On at Shutdown | | | | |
| 🔽 EHT Off @ | Log Off | | | | |
| FillTarget = 2.000 A | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Extractor V Target = 3.00 kV | | | | | |
| EHT Target = | 3.00 kV | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| OptiProbe Off | | | | | |
| l Probe = 200.0 nA | | | | | |
| < | | > | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Scanning tab

- Operating Mode Selects the operating mode *Normal Split:* Subdivides the image area into two zones (requires the licence SPLIT) *Reduced:* Scan a small frame (reduced raster) *Emission:* Changes to emission mode
- Store resolution Select the stored resolution
- Line Scan If ticked, a line is scanned permanently
- **Spot** If ticked, spot mode is active (requires the licence SPOT)
- **Dual Mag** If ticked, the dual mag function is active (requires the licence DUALMAG)
- Scan Speed Sets the velocity of the scan
- Cycle Time Indicates the cycle time depending on the selected scan speed
- Zoom factor Sets the zoom factor
- Freeze on Defines when the image is frozen.
- Noise Reduction Selects the noise reduction method
- Scan+/Scan-Increases/decreases the scan speed
- Freeze/Unfreeze Freezes/Unfreezes the scan

| SEM Contro | ol. | | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------|--|--|
| Gun | Apertures Stage | | | |
| Detectors | Scanning Vacuum | | | |
| Operating Mode | e = Normal | ~ | | |
| Store resolution | ı = 1024 * 768 | ~ | | |
| 📃 Line Scan | Scan Speed = | = 3 💌 | | |
| 📃 Spot | Cycle Time = | 338.57 ms | | |
| 📃 Dual Mag | Dual Mag | | | |
| - Noise Reduct | ion | | | |
| Freeze on = E | nd Frame | ~ | | |
| Noise Reduction = Pixel Avg. | | | | |
| Scan + | Freeze | Scan - | | |
| | | | | |

Stage tab

- Stage At Indicates position of the stage axis
- Go To Coordinates to be approached
- Stage Is Current state of the stage *Busy*: stage is moving *Idle*: stage is standing still
- **Z move on Vent** If ticked, the stage is driven to the lowest Z when the specimen chamber is ventilated.
- **Track Z** If ticked, the focus will be automatically re-adjusted after every change of the Z coordinate.
- Protected Z

.

If ticked, the current Z coordinate is compared with the new coordinate when calling saved stage coordinates.

If the new Z position is higher than the current one, the stage drives to the X/Y/T/R coordinate first, then to the new Z position. If the new Z position is lower than the current

one, Z is moved first, then the other axes.

• Stage XY + Z

Affects the Stage Scan function. If ticked, Z is moved in relation to the Z start coordinate if the stage moves in tilt direction.

- Joystick Disable If ticked, the dual joystick is disabled.
- Undo Go To
 Cancels the last movement.
- Stage Stop Stops the stage immediately.

| SEM Control 📃 🗖 | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|
| Detectors | Scanning | Vacuum | | | |
| Gun | Apertures | Stage | | | |
| Stage At | Go To | Delta | | | |
| X 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | | | | |
| Y 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | | | | |
| Z 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | Z | | | |
| T 4.0 ° | 0.0 * | T | | | |
| R 0.0 * | 0.0 * | R | | | |
| M 0.000 mm | 0.000 mm | M | | | |
| Stage Is = Idle | | | | | |
| Compuc. Mode = Off | | | | | |
| Z move on Vent Stage XY+Z | | | | | |
| Track Z Joystick Disable | | | | | |
| Protected Z Undo GoTo | | | | | |
| Safe Z = 50.00 | 10 mm Sta | ige stop | | | |
| | | | | | |

Column tab (MERLINTM only)

Column mode

Selects the column mode. Crossover Free Crossover Depth of Field Fish-eye

- EHT Target Sets the EHT target.
- I Probe Sets the I probe.

• Wobble Amplitude Allows changing the extent of the wobble movement if the Focus Wobble checkbox is ticked.

- Focus Wobble If ticked, the focus wobble is active in a reduced raster. Used to optimise the image.
- Wobble Fast Accelerated wobble speed.
- Beam Blanked

If ticked, the electron beam is removed from the beam path, the specimen is not scanned any more. This function blanks / unblanks the beam with the scanning coils in the column. The optional Beam Blanker is not controlled by this checkbox.

- Offset Correction
 Performs an offset correction.
- Navigation box Navigation box for adjustment of the parameters shown on the buttons on the left.
- Mag/Focus
 Allows setting of the magnification
- Aperture Align Allows setting of the aperture alignment
- Gun Align Allows setting of the gun alignment
- Stigmation Allows setting of the stigmator
- Beam Shift Allows setting of the beam shift.

| 📸 SEM Con | irol | | | _ 🗆 🔀 | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------|-------|--|
| Deteo | tors | | Scanr | ning | |
| Vacuum | Vacuum Gun Column Stage | | | | |
| Column mode: Crossover 🛛 💉 | | | | | |
| EHT Target = 3.00 kV | | | | | |
| I Probe = | 100 pA | | | | |
| Wobble Ar | mplitude = 1 | 0.0 % | | | |
| 📃 Focus V | Focus Wobble Wobble Fast | | | | |
| Beam Blanked Offset Correction | | | | | |
| Mag / Fo | cus A | perture A | Align | | |
| Aperture A | lign | | | | |
| Gun Alig | in – | | - | | |
| Stigmation | | | | | |
| Beam Sh | iift 🔍 < | | Ш | >0 | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |

Vacuum tab

Refer to section 6.1.9.

Gun Vacuum tab (VP instruments only) Refer to section 6.1.9.

6.1.10.4. Goto Panel

Opens the **Panel Configuration Bar**. Refer to section 6.2.

6.1.10.5. Camelot Interface

Allows the communication with the Camelot software.

Connect tab

- **Port Number** Select the port number.
- Start Listening Toggles between *Start Listening* and *Stop Listening*.

| amelot Properties 🛛 🗴 | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Connect Reg Main Layers Options | | | |
| Connection | | | |
| Port Number 5000 | | | |
| | | | |
| Start Listening | | | |
| Waiting | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

6.1.10.6. Image Capture Mode

Enables the image capture mode.

6.1.10.7. Capture Now

Saves the frozen image together with the Windows[®] overlay.

6.1.10.8. Image Capture Frequency

Sets the image update frequency.

6.1.10.9. User Preferences

Opens the user preferences dialog.

| ser Preferences | ~ | Name | Value | | ОК |
|---|-----|------------------------------------|--|----------|--------|
| User TIFF Explorer Language | 22 | Magnification 1 Value | 1000 | ~ | Capo |
| | | Magnification 2 Value | Disabled | ~ | Carree |
| - Access Level | | Magnification 3 Value | Disabled | ~ | |
| - Pressure Units | | Magnification 4 Value | Disabled | - | |
| Error Messages User Align Reset LUT User Directory Setup Image Directory Setup Magnification Display Plain Images Stage | | Magnification 5 Value | Disabled | ~ | |
| | | Magnification 5 value | Disabled | | |
| | | Magnification 6 value | Disabled | <u> </u> | |
| | 111 | Magnification 7 Value | Disabled | <u> </u> | |
| | | Magnification 8 Value | Disabled | × | |
| | | Magnification 9 Value | Disabled | ~ | |
| - Backlash | | Magnification 10 Value | Disabled | ~ | |
| - Fast Scanning | | | | | |
| Stage Graphics | | | | | |
| Noise Reduction | | | | | |
| M Axis Warping | | | | | |
| - Magnification Table | | | | | |
| - Magnification1 | | | | | |
| Magnification2 | | | | | 6 |
| - Magnification3 | | | | | |
| - Magnification4 | | Select magnification values to use | with mag table keys <f4> - up, <ctrl f4=""> - down, <shift< td=""><td>F4>-</td><td></td></shift<></ctrl></f4> | F4>- | |
| — Magnification5 | | exit | | | |
| - Magnification6 | _ | | | | |
| Magnification7 | ~ | 1 | | | |

6.1.10.10. Configure Mouse Adjust

- **OK** Confirms the settings.
- **Cancel** Aborts the settings.
- **3 Button wheel/standard** Selects the type of mouse
- Show the mouse adjustment... If ticked, the mouse image is shown.

| he options below shown when adju nay also disable - Choose My Mou | v allow you to choose the mouse image isting parameters with the mouse. You the mouse image entirely. use Type | OK Cancel |
|--|---|--------------|
| | Choose the mouse type that mos resembles your mouse. ③ 3 Button standard mouse ○ 3 Button 'wheel' mouse | t closely |
| Mouse Adjustm | ent Image Display mouse adjustment image when in mouse | adjust mode. |

6.1.10.11. Administrator

Changes to the SmartSEM[®] Administrator.

6.1.10.12. AVI Capture

Allows you to take a video sequence (AVI file).



6.1.10.13. AVI Options

- Capture Filename Sets the file name.
- Max file size Sets the maximum size of the file.
- Annotation merge If ticked, the annotations will be recorded in the AVI file.
- Compression Selects the reduction factor.
- Defaults
- **OK** Confirms the settings.
- **Cancel** Aborts the settings.

| AVI File Capture Options 🛛 🛛 🔀 |
|--------------------------------|
| Capture Filename |
| Capture.avi |
| Max filesize 2047 📚 MB |
| Annotation Merge |
| Compression Reduction 2 💌 |
| 📀 Capture every 📃 200 📚 ms |
| 🔿 Capture every 📃 👔 frames |
| Defaults OK Cancel |

6.1.11. Menu Help

The menu **Help** leads to a multitude of help texts and functions.



6.1.11.1. What's This

Activates the context-sensitive help.

The mouse cursor is equipped with a questions mark and can be moved to a point of interest on the screen.

Left-clicking indicates the appropriate help text.

6.1.11.2. Search

Opens the search function.

6.1.11.3. Release Notes

Shows a list of documents that contain information on software version history, such as new functions, bug fixes and special features.
6.1.11.4. SmartSEM Help

Leads to a range of help topics.

Comprises the tabs **Contents**, **Index**, **Search**, and **Favorites**. Favorites can be added by clicking on the **Add** button.

| 😫 Contents SmartSEM | |
|---|--|
| Hide Locate Back Forward Stop Refi | ් යි අප ගි- esh Home Print Options |
| Contents Index Search Favorites Topics: Venting the Chamber | Venting the Chamber |
| | When venting the chamber the column and electron gun are automatically isolated, so that the chamber can be brought to air without shutting down the electron gun. |
| Remove Direku | Click on Vacuum in the <u>Menu Bar</u> , then select Specimen Change. The <u>SEM Control panel</u> pops up. Now select Vent. |
| Current topic: Venting the Chamber | Click on Vac. in the <u>Status Bar</u> and then on Vent. |
| bbA | Type < AI T + C> then < C> The SEM Control namel nons un |

6.1.11.5. Getting Started

Opens a step-by-step guide for the first steps of operation.

6.1.11.6. How To

Opens a a step-by-step guide for frequently used operation sequences.

6.1.11.7. Keys help

Shows a list of the shortcuts (key combinations) for the operation of SmartSEM[®].

6.1.11.8. About SmartSEM

Shows identification data of the installed SmartSEM[®] version.

6.1.11.9. Help Always On Top

Brings help texts to the fore.

6.2. Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar

To access the Panel Configuration bar, select **Tools/Goto Panel** from the menu. Alternatively, click the arrow button at the right side of the image area.

A list of panel opens.

| Panel Config Bar | ОК |
|--|--------|
| When launching a panel normally, automatically close the panel config slider (left double click) | Cancel |
| When docking a panel, automatically close the panel config slider (right double click) | |
| Docking Panel | |
| | |

Opens the Docking Panel Options dialog.

- Toggle Shows/hides the docking panel.
- Help Calls the help function.
- Hides the Panel Configuration Bar.

To select a panel, double-click the panel name.



6.2.1. Airlock (optional)

Airlocks are used to reduce the possible contamination of the specimen chamber.

- Column Chamber valve = Indicates the status of the column chamber valve, which separates gun area and specimen chamber
- Open Column Chamber valve/Close Column Chamber valve Opens/Closes the column chamber valve if EHT is switched off
- **Pump/Vent** Starts pumping/venting procedure the airlock
- Hold Vacuum Pumps of the specimen chamber are switched off, but the airlock is not vented. Thus, the vacuum in the transfer room is preserved.
- Airlock Ready= Indicates status of the airlock
- Specimen Change/Resume Exchange Activates pre-defined macros to automate airlock procedure

| irlock | X |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Separation Valve | - |
| Column Chamber valve = Closed | |
| Open Column Chamber Valve | |
| Close Column Chamber Valve | |
| Airlock | |
| Hold Vacuum | |
| Airlock Ready = No | |
| Specimen Change | |
| Resume Exchange | |

6.2.2. Bakeout

Requires the Supervisor privilege.

CAUTION

To prevent parts of the SEM/FESEM from being damaged, refer to the detailed instructions in the instruction manual of the SEM/FESEM before starting the bakeout procedure.

- Bakeout
 Selects the bakeout duration.
 Quick: 2 h heating / 1 h cooling
 Overnight: 8 h heating / 2 h cooling
 Weekend: 40 h heating / 3 h cooling
 User: To be defined by the operator.
- Bakeout State = Indicates the current state. Idle/Heating/Cooling
- Bakeout Heat= Indicates the heating period set.
- Bakeout Cool Indicates the cooling period set.
- Bakeout Start Starts the bakeout procedure.
- Bakeout Cancel Aborts the bakeout procedure.

| a keout Bakeout = Overnight | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| Bakeout State = Idle | |
| Bakeout Heat = 8.001 | Hours |
| Bakeout Cool = 2.00 H | Hours |
| Bakeout Start | Bakeout Cancel |

6.2.3. Bakeout (MERLINTM only)

Requires the Supervisor privilege.

CAUTION

To prevent parts of the SEM/FESEM from being damaged, refer to the detailed instructions in the instruction manual of the SEM/FESEM before starting the bakeout procedure.

- Bakeout
 Selects the bakeout duration.
 Quick: 2 h heating / 1 h cooling
 Overnight: 8 h heating / 2 h cooling
 Weekend: 40 h heating / 3 h cooling
 User: To be defined by the operator.
- Bakeout State = Indicates the current state. Idle/Heating/Cooling
- Target /°C Displays the target temperature.
- Actual /°C Displays the current temperature.
- Heat /hours Displays the selected heating duration in hours.
- Cool /hours
 Displays the selected cooling duration in hours.
- **Total /hours** Displays the total bakeout duration including heating and cooling.
- Bakeout Start Starts the bakeout procedure.
- **Bakeout Cancel** Aborts the bakeout procedure.

| Bakeout State = | Idle | | | | |
|-------------------------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| Bakeout St | art | Bakeou | t Cancel | | |
| Ddkeour Su | art | Dakeou | Caricer | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Heaters | Target /°C | Actual /°C | Heat /hours | Cool /hours | Total/ hours |
| IGP 1 | 200.0 | 20.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 5.0 |
| | 200.0 | 20.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 5.0 |
| Flange 1 | | 20.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 5.0 |
| Flange 1 IGP 2 | 200.0 | 20.0 | | | |
| Flange 1 IGP 2 Flange 2 | 200.0 | 20.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 5.0 |

6.2.4. Beam Shift

- Mag/Focus Changes to magnification and focus setting.
- Beam Shift Activates the beam shift function. Assigns beam shift X and Y to the left mouse button.
- Beam Shift navigation box Changes the position of the specimen by shifting the beam.



6.2.5. BSD Control (optional)

Allows control of detectors with four diode quadrants such as AsB^{TM} detector and 4QBSD.

- Quadrants
 Symbolise the four quadrants
 Normal (+)
 Inverted (-)
 Disabled
- **BSD Gain** Selects the gain range.
- BSD:COMPO Activates compositional mode (all quadrants are in normal mode)
- BSD:TOPO
 Activates topography mode.
- Apply Applies the changes
- BSD: Set TOPO Changes the settings for TOPO.
- BSD Auto range If ticked, the auto range function is activated.



6.2.6. CAN Communication (MERLINTM only)

Displays the status of the Controller Area Network (CAN) communication for EHT, vacuum and stage.

This dialog is only used to display the communication states of the subsystems for diagnostic purposes.

- EHT Comms Fail Indicates if the CAN communication with EHT unit has failed.
- Vac comms fail Indicates if the CAN communication with the Vac Board has failed.
- Stage comms fail Indicates if the CAN communication with the Stage Board has failed.

| CAN Communication | × |
|-----------------------|-------|
| EHT Comms Fail = No | |
| Vac comms fail = No | |
| Stage comms fail = No | |
| | Close |
| | |

6.2.7. CZ Detector Calibration (optional)

Requires setting Service under Tools/User Preferences/User Access Level.



6.2.8. Calibrate Stage Centre

- Centre: Pos X Indicates the last value for X.
- Centre: Pos Y Indicates the last value for Y.
- **OK** Confirms the settings.
- Aborts the settings.
- Next Leads to the next step of the calibration procedure

| Calibrate Stage Centre | × |
|---|-------------------|
| Centre: Pos X (mm) 55.000 | ОК |
| Centre: Pos Y (mm) 65.000 | Cancel |
| Instructions | 1 |
| Please insert calibration grid int sample holder. Once fitted clic NEXT button. | o the k on the |
| <- Back Next-> | |

6.2.9. Calibrate Stigmation

This dialog should only be used by authorised Carl Zeiss service staff.

6.2.10. Colour Mode (licence: Colour Mode)

- Brightness A Sets brightness of signal A
- Contrast A
 Sets contrast of signal A
- Colour Mode
 Select colour mode
- Brightness B Sets brightness of signal B
- Contrast B
 Sets contrast of signal B

| signal A | Signal B |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Signal A = 💽 | Signal B = |
| Brightness A = 50.0 % | Brightness B = 50.0 % |
| Contrast A = 50.0 % | Contrast B = 50.0 % |
| Colour Mode | |
| | 1 2 3 4 |
| Colour Mode = Off | |
| | 🗹 G 🗖 G 🗖 G 🗖 G |
| | ✓В В В ✓В |

6.2.11. Column Calibration

Requires Service setting under Tools/User Preferences/User Access Level

Follow the instructions in the panel.

| Column Calibration 🛛 🛛 🔀 |
|----------------------------------|
| Beam Blanked Gun Wobble = Off |
| Focus Wobble Wobble Fast |
| C1 Wobb C2 Wobb C3 Wobb |
| Wobble Amplitude = 10.0 % |
| |
| Gun Align Gun at |
| Align 1 |
| Beam Shift |
| Stig Balance < > 0 |
| Condenser 1 C1 Reversal = Normal |
| Condenser 2 C2 Reversal = Normal |
| Enter Alignment Calibration |
| OK Cancel |

6.2.12. Compucentric Height (licence COMPU)

This dialog allows you to measure the compucentric height. (Refer to the SmartSEM[®] help for a detailed description)

| Compucentric Height : | × |
|---|---|
| 1) Centre a feature then press Read | |
| Read Stage Backlash | |
| 2) Tilt the stage | 5 |
| Tilt To | |
| 8 😴 🛛 Tilt 🛛 Go Back | |
| Nudge size | |
| 0.05 Up Down | |
| Stage stop | |
| 3) Centre it again, and press calculate | 7 |
| Compu. Height = 0.000 mm | |
| Compu Tilt Error = 0.2664 | |
| | |
| Calculate Estimate from WD | |
| Load OK Cancel | |

| | | Load Properties |
|--|--------------|--|
| 2.0 | | |
| Defects No file loaded | | Wafer Man |
| | | warei map. |
| | | |
| | | |
| - | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| Action on double click | | Disolav Image |
| Action on double click | Show details | Display Image |
| Action on double click Show images Goto sample location | Show details | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Set 1 |
| Action on double click Show images Goto sample location Use magnification | Show details | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Set 1 Stage registration |
| Action on double click Show images Goto sample location Use magnification: | Show details | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Stage registration Stage Registration Focus Mapping |
| Action on double click Show images Goto sample location Use magnification: Generate spiral sca | Show details | Display Image Width 64 Height 32 Set 1 (1) Stage registration Stage Registration Focus Mapping Stage registration is required before you can use |

6.2.13. Defect Review (licence DEFECT REVIEW)

- Load Loads a defect file (*rff).
- **Properties** Shows properties of the selected defect file.
- Wafer map Shows a two dimensional view of the wafer.

6.2.14. Define User Output Device Magnification

- Define Text ID Shows the name
- Define Image Width Indicates the width



6.2.15. Detector Signal Out Configuration (MERLINTM only)

This dialog is used to configure external detector outputs on the system. There are two detector outputs on each detector board fitted. Each may be configured as Signal A, Signal B or a specified detector name e.g. Inlens. A separate configuration can be selected for internal scan and each of the 4 external scan inputs. A detector signal can only be assigned to one video out.

Scan Source

Allows you to select the scan source. Internal Ext 0 Ext 1

- Ext 2
- Ext 3
- Video Out 0-5

Allows you to select the signal depending on the selection in the other Video Out drop down lists.

| Detector Signal Out Config |
|--|
| Scan Source: Internal Ext 0 Ext 1 Ext 2 Ext 3 |
| ADCO |
| Video Out 0 = Signal A 💌 Video Out 1 = Signal B 💌 |
| ADC1 |
| Video Out 2 = None Video Out 3 = None Video Out 3 = None |
| ADC2 |
| Video Out 4 = None Video Out 5 = None Video Out 5 = None |

6.2.16. Drift Correction

Reference Image

- Display Rectangle

Displays a movable frame. The image range inside the frame defines the reference image for the drift correction.

- Hide Rectangle

Hides the movable frame.

- Create Reference

Acquires a reference based on the current settings.

SEM drift status =: - No reference Reference has not yet been set. - Busy Busy creating reference. - Ready Reference has been created. Do SEM Drift Corrn can be clicked.

Do SEM Drift Corrn

Starts the SEM drift correction.

Settings

- Drift Max. Pix.Error =

This determines how close consecutive drift correction attempts should be to each other if they are to be considered as the same.

| Drift Correction | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| SEM Drift | |
| Reference Image | |
| Display Rectangle | |
| Hide Rectangle | |
| Create Reference | |
| | |
| Sem drift status = Ready | |
| Do SEM [| Drift Corrn |
| Settings | Beam Shift |
| Drift Max.Pix.Error = 1 | × 0.00 nm |
| Drift Min Conf = 50.0 % | Y 0.00 nm |
| | Zero Beam Shift |
| Drift Max Tries = 10 ∢ Ⅲ ▶ | Go to Reference |
| Default Settings | Options |
| Devie die Drift Orwentier | Use Stage |
| Deviced (a) 200 | Field Search |
| Penod (s) 500 | Auto Brightness |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

- Drift Min Conf =

As the drift correction algorithm uses a statistical image matching algorithm there is an element of uncertainty over whether the drift values it returns are correct. The certainty level determines the minimum certainty that the drift values are correct required to use those values to adjust the drift. Generally this should be a bit lower than the values returned during the test drift correction on the Take reference image page. A minimum of 25% is allowed. Values of 50% are quite reasonable and although you can enter up to 100% it is unlikely that an image would match with that strength of correlation. Note: The percentages are measures of correlation, not of probability; for example a certainty of 50% does not mean that for every 10 matches returned with this value 5 are wrong, in fact it is quite likely that they are all correct.

- Drift Max Tries =

When the drift correction algorithm is being used it takes the current image more than once and sees if the drift values returned are the same within certain limits on consecutive attempts this helps prevent mistakes. Max attempts sets how many times it should try to get a match before it decides that the drift correction is not working. If you set this to 0 then no drift correction will be used. If more than Max Attempts are required to find a matching image then the system assumes that the drift correction is not working and ignores it until the next drift interval.

- Default Settings

Restores the default settings.

- Periodic Drift Correction Period(s)

Allows you to schedule a periodic drift correction. A drift correction will be carried out everytime the set timespan in seconds has expired. This can only be used after a reference has been created.

Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar

Beam Shift

- X/Y

Displays the current beam shift in X/Y.

- Zero Beam Shift Sets the X/Y beam shift to zero.

- Go to Reference

Moves the specimen stage to the reference point.

Options

- Use Stage

If activated, only the stage is used for drift correction.

- Field Search

If activated, the reference point is searched in a larger field outside the rectangle.

Recommended in case of stronger drift .

- Auto Brightness

If activated, the Auto Brightness is activated to optimise image recognition.

| Drift Correction | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| SEM Drift | |
| Reference Image | |
| Display Rectangle | |
| Hide Rectangle | |
| Create Reference | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| Som drift status = Poady | |
| Seni unit status - Neady | |
| Do SEM | Drift Corrn |
| Settings | Beam Shift |
| Drift Max.Pix.Error = 1 | × 0.00 nm |
| Drift Min Conf = 50.0 % | Y 0.00 nm |
| | Zero Beam Shift |
| Drift Max Tries = 10 | Go to Reference |
| | Ontions |
| Default Settings | Use Stage |
| Periodic Drift Correction | Field Search |
| Period (s) 300 | Auto Brightness |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

6.2.17. Ext Scan Control

- Ext On Switches external scan control on
- Ext Off Switches external scan control off
- Ext. Scan Select Allows you to set the Ext Scan value

| Ext Scan Control | × |
|--------------------------|---|
| Ext On Ext Off | |
| Ext.Scan Control = On | |
| Ext. Scan Select = Ext 0 | 1 |

6.2.18. Image Navigation

Allows you to load an image from a variety of sources and then set-up a stage registration between the image and the stage. This will enable to navigate the stage by clicking on the image. There are two ways to register an image: manually (Manual Registration) or automatically (Auto Registration).



CAUTION

Danger of damaging stage or stubscope When using the stubscope, the stage will often be at high Z values. Tick the 'Protected Z' checkbox and set an appropriate value for Safe Z whenever moving between electron axis and stubscope axis.

- External Image Loads an externally generated image from a file.
- Setup Starts the Stage Registration wizard.
- Clear registration Cancels the registration.
- Load Loads an image.
- Save
 Saves an image.
- Current SEM Image Loads the current SEM image.

6.2.19. Large Image Store Wizard

The Large Image Store Wizard guides you through a process with three main steps to obtain images with high pixel resolution.

- Field of view: Displays the currently selected field of view in µm.
- Store resolution: Allows you to select a store resolution and the corresponding pixel size.
- Image preview: Displays a preview of the currently selected ROI.
- **Next** (active if resolution has been selected): Continues with the next step.
- **Previous** (active in steps 2 and 3): selects the previous step.
- **Cancel wizard**: Closes the Large Image Store Wizard.



6.2.20. Laser Finder (optional)

The Laser Finder is an accessory option designed to ease finding the area of interest on the specimen surface.

CAUTION

To prevent parts of the SEM/FESEM from being damaged, refer to the detailed instructions in the Instruction Manual Laser Finder before using the Laser Finder.

- Laser Finder If ticked, the Laser beam is active.
- Laser Illumination Changes brightness of laser spot.
- CCD Illum. Changes brightness of infrared light for CCD TV camera detection.

| Laser Finder | × |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Laser Finder | |
| Laser Illumination = 27.3 % | > |
| CCD Illum. = 65.0 % | > |

6.2.21. Long Distance Measurement

This allows you to measure the physical distance between two points on the specimen, which cannot be seen in a single field of view so cannot be measured using annotation.

(Refer to the SmartSEM[®] help for a detailed description).

| Long Distance Measurer | nent 🛛 🗙 |
|--|---------------------|
| Measure From X: Y: Z: | Use Current Goto |
| Measure To | |
| X: | Use Current |
| Y: | Goto |
| Z: | ✓ Track Stage |
| Measurement | |
| Separate Distances | |
| ◯Combined X & Y | |
| ◯ Combined X, Y & Z | |
| X Distance: | |
| Y Distance: | |
| Z Distance: | |
| | |

6.2.22. Magnification Calibration

Requires Service or Expert setting under Tools/User Preferences/User Access Level.

 Calibration mode Selects the calibration mode Cal Mode Off Cal Stig Balance Cal Output Dev Cal User Magnification

| 1agnification Calibratio | on a |
|--------------------------|--------|
| Output To = Display/File | ~ |
| Output To = Display/File | ¥ |
| | |
| | |
| OK | Cancel |

6.2.23. Nano Motor Control

This window refers to the optionally available Piezo Substage for AURIGA[®]. For detailed information on the Piezo Substage, refer to the Instruction Manual Piezo Substage.

- Piezo at X Displays the current position of the Piezo stage in X direction.
- **Piezo at Y** Displays the current position of the Piezo stage in Y direction.
- X/Y high/low limit hit If a X/Y high/low limit is reached, a message box is displayed in red. Otherwise the box is hidden.
- Nanomotor Step

This function allows you to select the step size from a drop down menu. *Coarse Medium Fine*

| Nano Motor Control | × |
|--|---|
| Piezo at X = 11688.200 µm | h limit hit Piezo Goto X = 14999.900 µm |
| Piezo at Y = 19.300 µm | Piezo Goto Y = 0.250 µm |
| Nanomotor Step Piezo Step Size = Medium V | Piezo State = Idle |
| | |
| Piezo Exchange Defined = No | Set Exchange Position Piezo Initialise |

The arrow buttons can be used to move the stage in single steps of the defined size, or to continuously move the Piezo stage when pressing down one of the arrow buttons. To be able to move the Piezo stage with the arrow buttons, the **Piezo Manual** checkbox has to be ticked.

• Piezo Exchange Defined

Indicates whether a specimen exchange position is defined for the Piezo stage or not. An exchange position can be set by clicking on **Set Exchange Position**.

Panels on the Panel Configuration Bar

• Piezo Goto X / Y

Allows you to enter predefined coordinates in a separate window. When clicking on **OK**, the Piezo stage will move to the entered coordinates.

Piezo State

Indicates the current state of the Piezo stage Idle: stage is standing still Moving: stage is moving Uninitialised: stage has not been initialised yet

- **Piezo Manual** Activates/deactivates the arrow buttons.
- Die Navigation
- Fold in / out icon Folds in / out the lower part of the window.
- Set Exchange Position Allows you to set a specimen exchange position for the Piezo stage.
- Piezo Initialise
 Initialises the Piezo stage

6.2.24. Peltier Stage

Peltier

Indicates if a Peltier cool stage is fitted and the Peltier Fitted checkbox in the SmartSEM[®] Administrator is ticked.

Peltier Temp

Indicates the current Peltier temperature if a Peltier cool stage is fitted and the Peltier Fitted checkbox in the SmartSEM[®] Administrator is ticked.

Peltier Target
 Indicates the Peltier target temperature.

| Peltier Stage | X |
|--------------------------|---|
| Peltier | |
| Pellier Temp = 20.0 °C | |
| Peltier Target = 20.0 °C | |
| | |

6.2.25. Plasma Cleaning

6.2.25.1. Main window

Recipe

- Recipe drop-down list Opens a selection of available recipes.
- Edit Recipes... Opens the Cleaning Recipes list.
- Recipe values
 Shows the following values of the currently selected recipe:
 - Plasma ignition pressure
 - Plasma pressure
 - Plasma time
 - Plasma power
 - Plasma total time

• Schedule cleaning cycle at:

If activated, a cleaning cycle will be carried out at the currently selected time and date with the active recipe.

- Date and time field Allows you to select a time and date for a scheduled plasma cleaning cycle.
- Status message area
 Shows status and error messages.
- Vac Status Displays the currently present vacuum status.
- Plasma State Displays the currently present plasma status.
- Plasma cleaner connected Shows if a Plasma Cleaner is connected.
- **Cleaning status** Shows if a plasma cleaning cycle is running.

| Plasma Cleaning | | | | × |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Recipe | | | Plasma Cleaner | Ì |
| Quick Sample Clean | - | Edit Recipes | Connected | RF On |
| plasma ignition pressure = 5.00e | -001 mbar | | Enabled | Plasma On |
| plasma pressure = 5.00e-001 mb | ar | | | Fault |
| | | | Plasma Cleaning Ser | quence |
| plasma time = 0.05 Hours | | | 🔴 Waiti | ng for vacuum |
| plasma anno 0.00 Houre | | | a contra | icina procesuro |
| plasma power = 14. w | Internet state time | 0.05.11 | T | ising pressure |
| | plasma total time | = 0.05 Hours | 🔴 Waiti | ng for ignition |
| Schedule cleaning cycle at: | 12-NOV-2012 14 | £:00 <u></u> , ♥ | ÷ | |
| No cleaning cycle is scheduled | | | Clean | ing |
| | | | | |
| | | | L Parga | ng |
| | | | 🌔 Finis | hed |
| | | | | |
| Vac Status = Ready | | | | |
| Plasma State = Disabled | - | | | |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes | - | | | |
| Cleaning status = Off | View Le | | Start cleaning | Ston cleaning |
| pood mig status = Off | VIEW LO | y | otari olearing | Stop Geaning |
| | | | | |

Plasma Cleaner

Connected

If active, the Plasma Cleaner controller hardware is switched on and connected.

Enabled

If active, a plasma cleaning process is running. This LED is also present on the Plasma Cleaner controller hardware (**ENABLE/DISA-BLE**).

RF On

If active, a plasma cleaning cycle is running and the radio frequency is on, which is necessary for the plasma to start. This LED is also present on the Plasma Cleaner controller hardware (**RF ON**).

Plasma On

If active, a plasma cleaning cycle is running and the plasma has ignited. This LED is also present on the Plasma Cleaner controller hardware (**PLASMA ON**).

• Fault

If active, the Plasma Cleaner is in error state.

- Plasma Cleaning Sequence
 Displays the steps of the currently running
 plasma cleaning cycle and their completion
 status.
- View Log...

Opens the Log file.

Start cleaning

Starts a plasma cleaning cycle using the current settings.

Stop cleaning

Stops the currently running plasma cleaning cycle and pumps the chamber.

| Recipe | | | Plasma Cleaner | |
|--|-------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Quick Sample Clean | - | Edit Recipes | Connected | RF On |
| plasma ignition pressure = 5.00e | 001 mbar | | Enabled | 🔴 Plasma On |
| plasma pressure = 5.00e-001 mb | ar | | | Fault |
| | | | Plasma Cleaning S | equence |
| plasma time = 0.05 Hours plasma power = 14. W | | | e Wai | ting for vacuum bilising pressure |
| Schedule cleaning cycle at: | plasma total time 12-Nov -2012 1 | e = 0.05 Hours 4:00 | ₩ai | ting for ignition |
| No cleaning cycle is scheduled | | | Clea U Pure | ning |
| | | | ↓ ● Fn | shed |
| Vac Status = Ready | 1 | | | |
| Plasma State = Disabled | 1 | | | |
| Plasma cleaner connected = Yes | 1 | | | |
| Cleaning status = Off | View L | ~ | Start cleaning | Stop clean |

6.2.25.2. Cleaning Recipes list

| Type | Recipe Name | Ignition Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Pressure (mbar) | Plasma Power (Watts) | Plasma Time (hh:mm) | Purge Pressure (mbar) | Purge Time (hh:mm) | Cycles | Total Time (hh:mm |
|------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| ixed | Quick Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:03 | | | | 00:03 |
| ixed | Sample Clean | 0.50 | 0.50 | 14.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| ixed | Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 20.00 | 00:10 | | | | 00:10 |
| ixed | Long Chamber Clean | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 01:00 | | | | 01:00 |
| ixed | Long Chamber Clean with Purge | 0.50 | 0.40 | 15.00 | 00:45 | 0.80 | 00:45 | 8 | 12:00 |
| Jser | Test | 0.40 | 0.40 | 5.00 | 00:01 | 0.60 | 00:01 | 2 | 00:04 |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Type

Displays the type of recipe:

- Fixed: Not editable and not deletable

- User: Editable and deletable
- Recipe Name Displays the name of the recipe.
- Ignition Pressure (mbar)
 Displays the plasma ignition pressure.
- Plasma Pressure (mbar)
 Displays the plasma operating pressure.
- **Plasma Power (Watts)** Displays the plasma operating power. Up to 20 Watts can be selected.
- Plasma Time (hh:mm)
 Displays the plasma time.

 For recipes without nitrogen purge, Plasma Time equals Total Time.
- **Purge Pressure (mbar)** Displays the nitrogen purge pressure.
- **Purge Time (hh:mm)** Displays the timespan for each nitrogen purge.
- Cycles

Shows the number of cycles. One cycle consists of plasma cleaning and a nitrogen purge. This value is only present if the recipe includes one or more nitrogen purges.

- Total Time (hh:mm) Displays the total time required to run the recipe. It is determined by the values Plasma Time, Purge Time and Cycles.
- Add...

Opens a dialog that allows you to create a new recipe.

• Edit...

Opens a dialog that allwos you to edit the currently selected recipe. This is only available for 'User' type recipes.

• Delete...

Opens a dialog that allows you to delete the currently selected recipe. This is only available for 'User' type recipes.

Close...

Closes the Cleaning Recipes list.

6.2.26. Rotate/Tilt

- Scan Rot If ticked, the scan rotation is active. Requires the licence SCANROT.
- Scan Rotation Allows setting of the scan rotation angle.
- **Tilt Corrn.** If ticked, the tilt correction is active.
- **Tilt Angle** Allows adjustment of the tilt angle.

| Rotate / Tilt 🛛 🛽 🛽 🔊 | 3 |
|------------------------|---|
| Dyn.Focus | |
| FCF Setting = 0.0 % | |
| | |
| 🗹 Scan Rot | |
| Scan Rotation = 90.0 * | |
| | |
| Tilt Corrn. | |
| Tilt Angle = 0.0 * | |
| | |

6.2.27. SEM Controls

Refer to section 6.1.10.3.

6.2.28. Soft Joystick

The Soft Joystick window opens.

- Stage vector navigation box Moves the X- and Y-axes.
- Stage vector Z Moves the Z-axis.
- Stage vector T Move the T-axis.
- Stage vector R Rotates the stage.
- Stage vector M Moves the M-axis.



6.2.29. Specimen Current Monitor

The Specimen Current Monitor dialog opens.

• SCM On

If ticked, the specimen current monitor is switched on.

• Spot

If ticked, spot mode is active, i.e. the electron beam is positioned on a particular spot on the specimen surface. Requires the licence SPOT.

| Specimen Curr | ent Monitor | × |
|---------------|-------------|---|
| Specimen I = | 0 fA | |
| SCM Status = | Off | |
| SCM On | Spot | |

6.2.30. Stage Encoder Calibration

Requires setting Service under Tools/User Preferences/User Access Level.



6.2.31. Stage Horizontal Alignment

Follow the instructions.

| Instruc | tions | |
|-----------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| Centre horizor button | Point the first referen ntal align. When don | ice point to e click 'NEXT' |
| | | |

6.2.32. Stage Limits

Allows entering the stage limits.

| Stag | e Limits | | | | × |
|------|-----------------|-----------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| | Limit Hit | Low Limit | High Limit | Edit Low Limit | Edit High Limit |
| х | None | 0.000 mm | 130.000 mm | 0.000 mm | 130.000 mm |
| Y | None | 0.000 mm | 130.000 mm | 0.000 mm | 130.000 mm |
| z | None | 0.000 mm | 50.000 mm | 0.000 mm | 50.000 mm |
| т | None | -1.0 * | 70.0 * | -1.0 * | 70.0 * |
| R | None | ·380.0 * | 380.0 * | -380.0 * | 380.0 * |
| | | | | | |
| | E Limito Exable | ц | | | |
| | Advanced >> | | | | |

6.2.33. Stage Nav Settings

| ample Holder properties | Holder Rotation C | offset Calibration |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Show Gallery | Holder Rot. Offse | et = 12.0 ° |
| Stage Centre Calibration | | |
| Stage Centre X = 0.000 mm | Spacer Thickness | |
| Stage Contro X = 0.000 mm | 0 mm | 🔘 54 mm |
| Stage centre F = 0.000 mm | 0 27 mm | 🔘 81 mm |
| Calibrate Stage Centre | O other: | 0.000 mm |
| Stage Height Calibration | | |
| Lens to Flat = 22.250 mm | Spacer Offset | |
| Distance from final lens to stage | (e) 0 mm | |
| reference plane | O 25 mm | 🔘 50 mm |
| Calibrate | O other: | 0.000 mm |

- Show Gallery
 - Shows the Sample Holder Gallery
- Calibrate Stage Centre Calibrates the centre of the stage.
- **Calibrate** Calibrates the height of the stage.

6.2.34. Stage Navigation

Refer to section 6.1.8.9.

6.2.35. Stage Points List

Save/Load

- Load

This function loads the coordinate list from a previously saved file. The current list of position data is deleted.

- Save

Saves the active list to the user directory. The extension is *.XYZ.

On Goto

Opens a drop-down list with these entries: - Set Magnification

If activated, the magnification of a list entry will be applied when the respective entry is selected. If deactivated, the magnification will remain at the current setting.

- Set Working Distance

If activated, the working distance will of a list entry will be applied when the respectivy entry is selected. If deactivated, the magnification will remain at the current setting.

- Move XY Only

If activated, the stage will only move in X and Y when a list entry is selected.

• Add

Opens the **Label Request** dialog that allows you to add a new stage position with a custom label.

• Del

Allows you to delete a stage position from the list. Only available if a list entry has been selected.

• Edit

Allows you to edit a stage position on the list. Only available if a list entry has been selected.

- Undo Stage Goto Cancels the stage movement.
- Stage stop

Stops the movement.

- Goto
 - First

Moves the stage to the position defined by the first entry in the Stage Points List. - Next

Moves the stage the position defined by the next entry in the Stage Points List.

- Prev

Moves the stage to the position defined by the previous entry in the Stage Points List. - Selected

Moves the stage to the position defined by the highlighted entry in the Stage Points List.



6.2.36. Stage Registration (licence STAGEREG)

| Allows you to define | a user specific 2D | coordinate system. |
|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 2 | | 2 |

| tage List = Reg 1 | Registration = No | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| Registration Details | Registered Move | |
| Name: | Sample at X = 0.0000 | Sample Goto X = 0.0000 |
| Units:(X,Y) | Sample at Y = 0.0000 | Sample Goto Y = 0.0000 |
| Tilt (Deg): 0 G | oto Stage Backlash | Backlash Warning |
| Rotation (Deg): 0 G | oto | + |
| Setup Registration | | |
| Load From File Save To Fi | le qu | 4 4 |
| Register | | |

6.2.37. Stage Scanning (licence STAGESCAN)

Allows you to scan an exactly defined series of regularly distributed image fields.

• Setup Wizard Starts the wizard

| Stage Scanning 2 |
|--|
| |
| |
| |
| |
| |
| 1v1 Fields Warning: XY Field Size is Zerol |
| Field Navigation |
| Het I at field I H |
| Stage Scan Pattern |
| |

6.2.38. Stage Survey (licence SURVEY)

Survey Mode provides the facility to enter a defined state Survey Mode State. Typically a long working distance and low magnification to achieve a wide field of view in which the specimen may be reviewed for features of interest. (Refer to the SmartSEM[®] help for a detailed description)

| Stage Survey | | 2 | 3 |
|----------------------------|---------|-------------|---|
| Survey Mode O Lowest Ma | g | | |
| 💿 Mag> | 100 | Get Current | |
| WD | 8 | Get Current | |
| Remember | Changes | Auto Focus | |
| Macro | | ~ | |
| Resolution Im | aging | | |
| Mag | | Get Current | |
| WD | | Get Current | |
| 📃 Auto Focu | IS | | |
| Macro | | | |
| Exit Survey M | ode | | |
| Macro | | ` | |
| Survey Mod | e | Off | |
| Load | | Save | |

6.2.39. User Settings

- **Joystick speed** Changes the speed of the joystick
- Stig Sensitivity Changes the sensitivity of the stigmator
- Panel Sensitivity Changes the sensitivity of the control panel encoders such as Focus
- Reset User Align Resets the user-specific user alignment table
- OK
 Confirms the settings

| User Settings | × |
|---------------------------|---|
| Joystick Speed = 1.000 | |
| | > |
| Stig Sensitivity = 1.000 | |
| | > |
| Panel Sensitivity = 1.000 | > |
| Reset User Align | |
| ОК | |

6.2.40. VP Control (VP instruments only)

- VP Target Sets the desired pressure.
- Go To HV/Go To VP Toggles between high vacuum mode (HV) and variable pressure mode (VP).
- Collector Bias Sets the collector bias of the VPSE detector.

| VP Control | × |
|------------------------|----------|
| Chamber = 1.93e-004 Pa | |
| Go To HV | Go To VP |
| Collector Bias = 300 V | |

6.2.41. Water Flow/Temperature

- Stage Too Hot Indicates the temperature status.
- EO Too Hot Indicates the temperature status.
- Water OK Indicates the water status.
- EO Temp Only in case of an error: Indicates the current temperature of the EO Board.
- EO Temp Limit Only in case of an error: Indicates the limit temperature of the EO Board.
- SEM Overheat Indicates the status.
- **Reset Overheat** Quits the error message.
- Close Closes the Water Flow/Temperature dialog.

| Water Flow/Temperature | |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Stage Too Hot = No | |
| EO Too Hot = No | |
| | |
| Water OK = Yes | |
| EO Temp = 0.0 °C | |
| EO Temp Limit = 35.0 °C | |
| SEM Overheat - OK | |
| JSEM OVERNEAL - OK | |
| Reset Overheat | Close |

6.2.42. Water Flow/Temperature (MERLINTMonly)

• Stage Too Hot

Indicates the temperature status.

EO

This section covers all water supply of the EO board, which is divided in the EO dynamic and the EO static.

- EO dynamic flow Indicates the status of the EO dynamic water flow.
- EO dynamic temperature Indicates the status of the EO dynamic water temperature.
- EO static water flow Indicates the status of the EO static board water flow.
- EO static water temperature Indicates the status of the EO static water temperature.

Water Flow

This section covers overall water flow and temperatures

- Water OK Indicates the water flow status.
- Water flow temperature Indicates the water flow temperature.
- Water return temperature Indicates the water return temperature.

Water Temperature Status

This section summarises all water thresholds.

- Water in high critical Indicates if the water in high critical value has been reached.
- Water in low critical Indicates if the water in low critical value has been reached.
- Water out high critical Indicates if the water out high critical value has been reached.
- Water out low critical Indicates if the water out low critical value has been reached.
- Close Closes the Water Flow/Temperature dialog.

| Water Flow and Temperature | × |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Stage Too Hot = No | |
| | |
| EO | |
| EO dynamic flow = normal | |
| EO dynamic temperature = normal | |
| E0 static water flow = normal | |
| EO static water temperature = normal | |
| Water Flow | |
| Water OK = Yes | |
| Water flow temperature = 0.0 °C | |
| Water return temperature = 0.0 °C | |
| | |
| Wakay Tananayahi wa Ghabi ya | |
| water in high critical = No | - |
| | - |
| | _ |
| water out high critical = No | |
| water out low critical = No | |
| | |
| | |
| Close | |
| | |

6.2.43. Windowing

Windowing allows you to display two different detector signals on the monitor.

- Windowing If ticked, the windowing function is active.
- Zone = Selects the active zone. Zone 0: outside the reduced raster Zone 1: inside the reduced raster
- SignalA = Selects the detector signal
- Invert A = On/Off Activates/deactivates the inversion of the signal of the respective zone

| Windowing | × |
|----------------|---|
| Windowing | |
| Zone = 1 | |
| Signal A = SE2 | ~ |
| Invert A = Off | |

| lcon | Tool tip text | Left mouse button | Middle mouse button |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| | Restore Conditions/ Load State | Loads the state stored last when the program was ended. | Activates the window loading a stored state (Load State). |
| I † | Accelerating Voltage/ Gun Control | Opens the EHT target window to set the acceleration voltage | Calls the Gun tab in the SEM Controls window |
| | Specimen Change/ Vacuum Control | Ventilates the specimen cham- ber. Pumps the specimen chamber. | Calls the Gun Vacuum tab in the SEM Controls window. |
| 4 | VP Control/VP Target | Calls the VP Control panel. | Assigned with the VP Target |
| 1 | Pix Avg 1/ Cont Avg 2 | Pixel averaging at scan speed 2 | Continuous frame averaging at scan speed 2 |
| 2 | Pix Avg3/Cont Avg4 | Pixel averaging at scan speed 3 | Continuous frame averaging at scan speed 4 |
| 3 | Pix Avg6/Cont Avg? | Pixel averaging at scan speed 6 | Continuous frame averaging at scan speedspeed 6 |
| 4 | Pix Avg 9/Frame Int 5 | Pixel averaging at scan speed 9 | Frame averaging at scan speed 5 (image is frozen after scan) |
| 5 | Frame Int/Frame Int 8 | Frame averaging at scan speed 7 (image is frozen after scan) | Frame averaging at scan speed 8 (image is frozen after scan) |
| X + | Faster/Slower | Sets a higher scan speed. | Sets a lower scan speed. |
| ک ر | Freeze:Unfreeze/ Scanning | Freezes/unfreezes the image. | Calls Scanning tab in the SEM Controls window |
| | Normal/Scanning | Normal screen mode (Scan range displayed over the com- plete monitor). Wobbler is switched off. Mouse button assignment: magnification/focus | Calls Scanning tab in the SEM Controls window |

6.3. Assignments of toolbar icons (default toolbar)

| lcon | Tool tip text | Left mouse button | Middle mouse button |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| 1 1 | Reduced Raster/ Apertures | Switches between reduced scan and normal screen mode. | Calls Aperture tab in the SEM Controls Panel. |
| | Split Screen/ Detectors | Switches between split screen and normal screen mode. | Calls Detectors tab in the SEM Controls Panel. |
| € 1 | Dual Magnification/ Detectors | Switches between dual magnifi- cation and normal screen mode. | Calls Detectors tab in the SEM Controls Panel. |
| t P | ChamberScope/ Detector Control | Activates the CCD TV camera. Mouse button assignment: brightness/contrast | Calls Detectors tab in the SEM Controls Panel. |
| 00 | Stigmation/ Alignment | Activates the reduced raster. Mouse button assignment: StigX, StigY/ Focus | Calls wobbler and activation of reduced scanning. |
| + + + | Point To Point/ Annotation Text | Inserts a point to point measure- ment. | Calls text editor. |
| | Brightness + Con- trast/ Toggle ABCC | When AutoBC is deactivated in the detector window, the mouse button assignment is switched to brightness/contrast. When the AutoBC function is activated, the mouse button assignment is switched to GAIN/OFFSET | Switches from AutoBC= ON (mouse button assignment GAIN/ OFFSET) to AutoBC= OFF (mouse button assignment brightness/contrast) and back. |
| * | Toggle INLENS:SE2/ Detector Control | Switches between In-lens and SE2 detector | Calls Detectors tab in the SEM Controls Panel. |
| | Magnification + Focus/ Auto Focus + Stig | Mouse button assignment: mag- nification/focus | Calls Auto Focus and Auto Stig- mator algorithm. |
| TIFF | Save TIFF/ TIFF Export Dialog | Saving an image as TIFF file with the agreed settings | Calls Export TIFF window. |
| avr. | Print Image/ Printer Dialog | Prints the image on the default printer. | Calls Print Setup window |
6.4. MiniBar icons

| lcon | Tool tip text | Function |
|----------|---------------|--|
| 1 | Start | Allows quick access to Pump/Vent as well as EHT On/EHT Off and Gun ON/Off function. |
| | Recent Panels | Allows quick access to recently used functions. |
| | Recipes | Allows quick access to stored recipes |

6.5. Annotation icons

| lcon | Tool tip text | Function |
|--------------|--------------------------------|---|
| No. | Select Annotation Object(s) | Allows you to select individual annotations. |
| *5 | EM Mouse Control | Enables the control of EM parameters via mouse. |
| | Undo Last Edit | Cancels the last step. |
| - | Load Annotation | Loads a user annotation. |
| ļ | Save Annotation | Saves the annotations as user annotation. |
| \mathbf{k} | Delete All Visible Objects | Deletes all visible annotations. |
| | Export Area Selection | Defines the export area. |
| Τ | Annotation Text | Adds a text the user can enter. |
| | EM Parameter | Adds parameters, the user has selected from a list displayed. |
| | Insert User Bitmap of Metafile | Adds an image, e.g. a logo. |
| | Annotation Line | Adds a line. |
| | Annotation Rectangle | Adds a rectangle. |

| lcon | Tool tip text | Function |
|------------|----------------------------|--|
| \bigcirc | Annotation Ellipse | Adds an ellipse or a circle. |
| ମ୍ବ | Sticky Panel | Adds a rectangle to the overlay plane onto which anno- tation objects can be "stuck". The rectangle can be transparent or filled with a pattern. |
| X | Zone Magnification | Allows you to show the magnification of a selected zone which might be helpful when the magnifications of different zones are not the same. |
| μ | Micron Marker | Adds a horizontal bar which indicates the size of an object in the image. Above the bar its length is displayed. |
| μ | Fixed Micron Marker | Adds a horizontal bar which indicates the size of an object in the image. The bar represents a fixed dimension. |
| * | Point to Point Measure | Allows you to measure the size of a certain feature. |
| | Angular Measurement | Allows you to measure an angle between two objects. |
| | Linewidth Measure | The linewidth measurement facility is a rectangle which may be adjusted in height, width, and angle. |
| \bigcirc | Radial Measure | The radial measurement facility is a circle which may be adjusted in diameter. |
| μ | Width Measurement Cursors | Comprises a related pair of vertical lines. Each line may be adjusted in position. |
| μ | Height Measurement Cursors | Comprises a related pair of horizontal lines. Each line may be adjusted in position. |
| μļ | Moveable Width Cursor | Comprises a vertical measurement bar with variable length and position. |

| lcon | Tool tip text | Function |
|------------------|------------------------|---|
| ° <mark>µ</mark> | Moveable Height Cursor | Comprises a horizontal measurement bar with variable length and position. |
| ×× ₩⁄₩ | Stored Vector Profile | Shows a vector profile. |
| | Stored Data Histogram | Shows a data histogram. |
| Till | Insert TIFF Data | Inserts tiff. |

6.6. Shortcuts

Many functions and menus which are often used in the SmartSEM $^{\mbox{$\mathbb{R}$}}$ user interface can also be opened using the keyboard.

The function keys F5, F6, F7, F8 and F11 as well as SHIFT + F5, F6, F7, F8 and F11 can be assigned with different functions via the macro editor.

The different keys and key combinations in the SmartSEM[®] software are briefly explained in the table below.

| Key/Key combination | Function |
|---|--|
| <f1></f1> | Calls the general help texts. |
| <shift +="" f1=""></shift> | Calls the context-sensitive help. |
| <f2></f2> | Hides/shows the toolbar. |
| <shift +="" f2=""></shift> | Corrects the lens hysteresis. |
| <f3></f3> | Hides/shows open a window in the SmartSEM [®] user interface. |
| <shift +="" f3=""></shift> | Hides/shows toolbars, menu bar, status bar etc. |
| <f4></f4> | Activates the Magnification Table and switches to the next fixed magnification. or resets the Centre Feature magnification (when pressing F4 after using the Centre Feature function, the old magnifi- cation is reset.) |
| <shift +="" f4=""></shift> | Ends the use of the Magnification Table. |
| <f5> <f6> <f7> <f8> <f11></f11></f8></f7></f6></f5> | Reserved for user defined macros. |
| <shift +="" f5=""> <shift +="" f6=""> <shift +="" f7=""> <shift +="" f8=""> <shift +="" f11=""></shift></shift></shift></shift></shift> | Reserved for user defined macros. |
| <f9></f9> | Calls the help function for shortcut keys. |
| <f10></f10> | Sets the cursor into the menu bar. |
| <f12> <shift +="" f12=""></shift></f12> | Stops the specimen stage immediately. |
| | |
| table border="1"table border="1"table border="1"table border="1"table border="1" <th>Toggles between coarse and fine mode.</th> | Toggles between coarse and fine mode. |
| <ctrl +="" tab=""></ctrl> | Performs the Centre Point function. |
| <ctrl +="" shift="" tab=""></ctrl> | Performs the Centre Feature function. |
| <home></home> | Resets Beam Shift to zero. |

Table 6.1: Important keys and key combinations

| Key/Key combination | Function |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <scroll lock=""></scroll> | Toggles between Freeze and Unfreeze. |
| <pause></pause> | Causes currently executing macro to continue Stops a running macro |
| | |
| <ctrl +="" a=""></ctrl> | Calls the Annotation panel. |
| <ctrl +="" b=""></ctrl> | Calls the Toolbar View panel. |
| <ctrl +="" c=""></ctrl> | Copies. |
| <ctrl +="" e=""></ctrl> | Calls the Export TIFF dialog for saving the image. |
| <ctrl +="" f=""></ctrl> | Starts Auto Focus fine. |
| <ctrl +g=""></ctrl> | Switches SEM Controls panel On. |
| <ctrl +="" i=""></ctrl> | Calls the SmartSEM Status Panel. |
| <ctrl +="" m=""></ctrl> | Adds a point -to-point marker. |
| <ctrl +="" 0=""></ctrl> | Loads an image. |
| <ctrl +="" p=""></ctrl> | Calls the Pint Setup dialog. |
| <ctrl +="" s=""></ctrl> | Starts the Auto stigmation procedure. |
| <ctrl +="" t=""></ctrl> | Inserts annotation text. |
| <ctrl +="" v=""></ctrl> | Pastes. |
| <ctrl +="" f4=""></ctrl> | During the use of the Magnification Table: Returns to the previously used magnification. |
| <ctrl +="" f="" shift=""></ctrl> | Starts Auto Focus (coarse). |

Table 6.1: Important keys and key combinations

7. Abbreviations

| 2D | Two dimensional |
|---------|---|
| 4QBSD | Four quadrant backscattered electron detector |
| ABCC | Automatic brightness and contrast control |
| Auto BC | Auto brightness and contrast |
| AVI | Audio video interleaved |
| BC | Brightness and contrast |
| BMP | Bitmap |
| CC | Charge compensation |
| DB | Database |
| EDX | Energy dispersive spectroscopy |
| EHT | Electronic high tension |
| EM | Electron microscope |
| EsB | Energy selective Backscattered electrons |
| FCF | Frame Corrected Focus = Dynamic Focus |
| FESEM | Field emission scanning electron microscope |
| FOV | Field of view |
| FTP | File transfer protocol |
| GIS | Gas injection system (optional accessory) |
| HV | High vacuum |
| I | Current |
| ID | Identification |
| JPEG | Joint Photographic Experts Group |
| LB | Left mouse button |
| LUT | Look-up table |
| MB | Middle mouse button |
| SCM | Specimen current monitor |
| SE | Secondary electron |
| SEM | Scanning electron microscope |
| TIF | Tagged image format |
| V | Voltage |
| VP | Variable pressure |
| WD | Working distance |
| ХВ | Cross Beam [®] |

8. Glossary

| Administrator | The SmartSEM [®] Administrator is part of the SmartSEM [®] program suite, which allows user management e.g. creating users and assigning them with certain privileges. The SmartSEM [®] Administrator is protected by an administrator password. |
|---------------------|--|
| Annotation | Software function that allows adding notes or graphical objects to the image. |
| Crosshairs | A graphical object for assessing the relative position of objects in the image. |
| Dongle | A device that is needed in order to use protected software. |
| EM Server | A server that implements the internal communication between control software and microscope hardware. |
| Eucentric | Type of stage, the rotation axes of which intersect in the same point. The specimen surface is located in the eucentric point, where the tilt axis meets the beam axis. This guarantees that the focus is maintained when the specimen is tilted at a certain working distance. |
| Expert | One of the SmartSEM $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ user levels, good for a person with special knowledge and training in operating a FESEM. |
| Graticules | A grid displayed over the image. |
| High current | Mode which increases the active probe current obtained by a stronger activation of the condenser lens. |
| Ingredient list | A list that defines the contents of a recipe, i.e. the combination of saved parameters. |
| Licence | Licences are used to enable specific functionality in the $SmartSEM^{\texttt{®}}$ software. |
| LUT | Look Up Table which can be used to improve the image illumination. |
| Magnification Table | Function of SmartSEM $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ that allows you to enter fixed magnifications for quick access during the imaging procedure. |
| MiniBar | Part of the SmartSEM [®] user interface which allows quick access to recently used dialogs and to the recipe management. |
| Novice | One of the SmartSEM [®] user levels, good for a person who is new and has little experience in operating a FESEM. |
| OptiProbe | Optional function which allows you to continuously adjust the probe current. |
| Recipes | Function of SmartSEM [®] that allows you to save a set of SEM parameters which are ideal for a certain type of specimen. |
| Service/Full | The highest SmartSEM [®] user level. |
| Splash screen | Animated start screen of SmartSEM [®] . |
| Supervisor | Privilege that permits to start the Administrator and - among others - enables to edit or create user directories and to start the bakeout function. |

| User Preferences | Section that allows you to define user-specific pre-setting of the Smart-SEM $^{\it @}$ user interface e.g. language or pressure units. |
|------------------|---|
| Zone | Part of the image area when displaying different detector signals or image areas. |

9. Index

A

Acceleration voltage 95 Accounting 198 Administrator 190 Airlock 291 Anchor symbol 25, 114 Annotation bar 25 Annotation icons 326 Annotations 153 Any Level 194 Aperture 102 Aperture size 98 Astigmatism 103 Auto Stigmation 103 AutoBC 112 AVI 178

В

Backlash 68 Backup 228 Bakeout 292 Beam shift 67, 263 Beam shift, large 67 Blanking the beam 97 BMP 175 Brightness 111

С

Calibrating magnification 220 Camelot software 226 CAN Communication 295 CCD camera 120, 241 Centre feature function 85 Centre point function 85 ChamberScope 120 **Cleaning Recipes 311** Clipboard 257 **Collector Bias 110** Collector voltage 110 Colour mode 117 Column Chamber Valve 275, 291 **Compucentric 78** Continous Average 136 **Continuous Centre Point 85** Contrast 111 Control panel 206 Coordinate system 91 Copying images 182 Crosshairs 163, 261 Crosshairs, movable 164, 260

D

Data zone 25, 212, 260 DEFECT REVIEW 227 Detector Signal Out Configuration 300 Detectors 109 Dongles 15 Dot, blue 26 Dot, red 26 Drift Correction 301 Drift Max Tries = 301 Drift Max. Pix.Error = 301 Drift Min Conf = 301 Dynamic Focus 131

Е

EDX 124 EHT 95 Error messages 239 Evacuating 63 Expert 26, 194, 209 Ext Scan Control 303 Extractor voltage 99

F

Fisheye mode 72 Focus wobble 48, 102 Frame Average 135 Frame Integrate 135 FTP server 184 Full 194

G

Graticule spacing 261 Graticules 163, 165, 261 Gun 93, 94 Gun Monitor 106 Gun Vacuum 59, 60

Н

Help 53 High current mode 100 HV mode 65

I

Icons 216 Image area 115 Image Capture Mode 177 Image drift 69 Image Gallery 180 Image Navigation 304 Image stitching 20 Image Stitching Application 17 Ingredient list 169 Initialise stage 195, 239, 240 Intended use 11

J

JEPG 175 Joystick 206, 241 Joystick TV angle 239, 241

Κ

Knights Camelot 226

L

Language 208 Large Image Store Wizard 187, 305 Laser Finder 232, 305 Licence 15, 19, 223 Line 126 Line Average 135 Line Integrate 135 Line Scan 126 Loading images 179 Logo 213 Long Distance Measurement 306 Look Up Tables 138 LUT 138, 147

Μ

Macros 278 Magnification 118, 130, 220 Magnification Table 130, 210 Magnifications, pre-defined 130, 210 Measuring 158 Menu bar 25 Menus 247 Micron marker 72, 157 MiniBar 25, 172, 325 Mixing 113 Mouse 206 Mouse buttons 323

Ν

Nano Motor Control 307 Noise reduction 135, 137 Novice 26, 194, 209

0

OptiProbe 101, 239, 242 Overheat 244 Owners 203

Ρ

Panel Configuration Bar 25, 34, 290 Partial Vent on Standby 275 Password 191, 195 Peltier Stage 308 Pixel Average 136 Plasma Cleaner 234 Plasma Cleaning 309 Pressure unit 209 Printing images 181 Privileges 194 Probe current 98, 101 Protected Z 274, 283

Q

Question mark near micron marker 72 Quiet Mode 232

R

Recipe 248 Recipe, common 166 Recipe, user-specific 166 Recipes 166 Reduced raster 123 RS232 224

S

Safety 11, 12 Sample Holder 75 Sample Holder Gallery 77 Saving images 173, 177 Scan mark 126 Scan marker 129 Scan speed 122 Scanning 269 SCANROT 128 SEM parameters 104, 106 SEM Status 261 SEM status window 104 Service 209 Service/Full 26 Signal-to-noise ratio 135 SmartSEM® Administrator 190 SmartStitch 17, 18 Soft joystick 66 Specimen chamber 74 Specimen current 233 Specimen exchange 61 Splash screen 207 Spot 124 Stage centre 78 Stage coordinates 84 Stage initialise 195, 240 Stage Map 86 Stage navigation 74 Stage, non-eucentric 78 Status bar 25 Stereo image 144 Stigmator 103, 206 Supervisor 191, 195 Survey Mode 88, 90

System requirements 15 System Vacuum 59

Т

Taking videos 178, 287 Temperature 244, 245 Terms 14 TIF 173 Tilt Correction 133 Toolbar 25, 215, 255, 259 Toolbar icons 323 Touch alarm 66, 239, 244 Triangle, red 26, 177 Troubleshooting 239 Typography 13

U

User 190 User access levels 26, 209 User accounting 198 User interface (UIF) 24, 208 User Level Permissions 194 User preferences 208 User profile 192, 196 User toolbar 25 Users 198

V

Vac Quiet Mode 232 Vacuum 59 Variable pressure 64 Ventilating 61 VP instruments 59, 64 VP mode 64

W

Wafer defect files 227 Water flow 244, 245, 246 WDX 124 Windowing 114 Windows XP Remote 225 Wobble 48, 102 Working distance 121 working session 198

Z

Z 195 Z move on Vent 195, 274, 283

Carl Zeiss Microscopy GmbH Carl-Zeiss-Promenade 10 07745 Jena Germany microscopy@zeiss.com

Carl Zeiss Microscopy Ltd. 509 Coldhams Lane Cambridge Cambridgeshire CB1 3JS UK microscopy@zeiss.com

Carl Zeiss Microscopy, LLC One Zeiss Drive Thornwood, NY 10594 USA microscopy@zeiss.com

Plus a worldwide network of distributors

www.zeiss.com/microscopy

Due to a policy of continuousdevelopment, we reserve the right to change specifications without notice.

© Carl Zeiss Microscopy GmbH